

2016 **E-SERIES** Owner's Manual



owner.ford.com



ford.ca

2016 **E-SERIES** Owner's Manual



October 2015  
Second Printing  
Owner's Manual  
E-Series  
Litho in U.S.A.



GC2J19A321 AA



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2015

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 03/2015 20150918194123



# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

|  |    |
|--|----|
| About This Manual.....                   | 5  |
| Symbols Glossary.....                    | 5  |
| Data Recording.....                      | 7  |
| California Proposition 65.....           | 9  |
| Perchlorate.....                         | 9  |
| Ford Credit.....                         | 9  |
| Replacement Parts<br>Recommendation..... | 9  |
| Special Notices.....                     | 10 |
| Mobile Communications<br>Equipment.....  | 11 |
| Export Unique Options.....               | 11 |

## Environment

|                                 |    |
|---------------------------------|----|
| Protecting the Environment..... | 12 |
|---------------------------------|----|

## Child Safety

|                                  |    |
|----------------------------------|----|
| General Information.....         | 13 |
| Installing Child Restraints..... | 14 |
| Booster Seats.....               | 18 |
| Child Restraint Positioning..... | 20 |

## Seatbelts

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Principle of Operation.....                       | 22 |
| Fastening the Seatbelts.....                      | 23 |
| Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....                   | 25 |
| Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator<br>Chime..... | 25 |
| Child Restraint and Seatbelt<br>Maintenance.....  | 26 |

## Supplementary Restraints System

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Principle of Operation.....             | 27 |
| Driver and Passenger Airbags.....       | 28 |
| Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator..... | 33 |
| Airbag Disposal.....                    | 33 |

## Keys and Remote Controls

|  |    |
|--|----|
| General Information on Radio<br>Frequencies..... | 34 |
| Remote Control.....                              | 34 |
| Replacing a Lost Key or Remote<br>Control.....   | 36 |

## Locks

|                            |    |
|----------------------------|----|
| Locking and Unlocking..... | 37 |
|----------------------------|----|

## Security

|                                |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| Passive Anti-Theft System..... | 40 |
|--------------------------------|----|

## Steering Wheel

|                                   |    |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| Adjusting the Steering Wheel..... | 42 |
| Voice Control.....                | 42 |
| Cruise Control.....               | 42 |

## Wipers and Washers

|                         |    |
|-------------------------|----|
| Windshield Wipers.....  | 43 |
| Windshield Washers..... | 43 |

## Lighting

|                                 |    |
|---------------------------------|----|
| General Information.....        | 44 |
| Lighting Control.....           | 44 |
| Instrument Lighting Dimmer..... | 45 |
| Daytime Running Lamps.....      | 45 |
| Direction Indicators.....       | 45 |

## Windows and Mirrors

|                       |    |
|-----------------------|----|
| Power Windows.....    | 46 |
| Exterior Mirrors..... | 46 |
| Interior Mirror.....  | 47 |
| Sun Visors.....       | 48 |

## Instrument Cluster

|                                      |    |
|--------------------------------------|----|
| Gauges.....                          | 49 |
| Warning Lamps and Indicators.....    | 51 |
| Audible Warnings and Indicators..... | 53 |

# Table of Contents

---

## Information Displays

|                           |    |
|---------------------------|----|
| General Information.....  | 55 |
| Information Messages..... | 60 |

## Climate Control

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Manual Climate Control.....                       | 63 |
| Hints on Controlling the Interior<br>Climate..... | 65 |
| Rear Passenger Climate Controls.....              | 66 |

## Seats

|                                      |    |
|--------------------------------------|----|
| Sitting in the Correct Position..... | 67 |
| Head Restraints.....                 | 67 |
| Manual Seats.....                    | 68 |
| Power Seats.....                     | 69 |

## Auxiliary Power Points

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Auxiliary Power Points..... | 70 |
|-----------------------------|----|

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

|                                 |    |
|---------------------------------|----|
| General Information.....        | 72 |
| Ignition Switch.....            | 72 |
| Starting a Gasoline Engine..... | 72 |
| Engine Block Heater.....        | 74 |

## Fuel and Refueling

|                              |    |
|------------------------------|----|
| Safety Precautions.....      | 75 |
| Fuel Quality.....            | 76 |
| Fuel Quality.....            | 76 |
| Running Out of Fuel.....     | 77 |
| Refueling.....               | 77 |
| Fuel Consumption.....        | 79 |
| Emission Control System..... | 80 |

## Transmission

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Automatic Transmission..... | 83 |
|-----------------------------|----|

## Brakes

|  |    |
|--|----|
| General Information.....                       | 88 |
| Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock<br>Brakes..... | 88 |
| Parking Brake.....                             | 89 |

## Traction Control

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Principle of Operation..... | 90 |
| Using Traction Control..... | 90 |

## Cruise Control

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Principle of Operation..... | 91 |
| Using Cruise Control.....   | 91 |

## Driving Aids

|               |    |
|---------------|----|
| Steering..... | 92 |
|---------------|----|

## Load Carrying

|                 |    |
|-----------------|----|
| Load Limit..... | 93 |
|-----------------|----|

## Towing

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Towing a Trailer.....                  | 100 |
| Trailer Sway Control.....              | 101 |
| Recommended Towing Weights.....        | 101 |
| Essential Towing Checks.....           | 103 |
| Transporting the Vehicle.....          | 110 |
| Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels..... | 110 |

## Driving Hints

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Breaking-In.....                | 112 |
| Reduced Engine Performance..... | 112 |
| Economical Driving.....         | 112 |
| Driving Through Water.....      | 113 |
| Floor Mats.....                 | 113 |

## Roadside Emergencies

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Roadside Assistance.....     | 115 |
| Hazard Warning Flashers..... | 116 |
| Fuel Shutoff.....            | 116 |

# Table of Contents

|  |     |   |     |
|--|-----|---|-----|
| Jump Starting the Vehicle.....   | 117 | Changing a Bulb.....  | 151 |
| <b>Customer Assistance</b>   |     | Bulb Specification Chart.....                                     | 153 |
| Getting the Services You Need.....                                     | 120 | Changing the Engine Air Filter.....                               | 155 |
| In California (U.S. Only).....   | 121 | <b>Vehicle Care</b>   |     |
| The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto<br>Line Program (U.S. Only)..... | 122 | General Information.....  | 156 |
| Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration<br>Program (Canada Only).....      | 123 | Cleaning Products.....  | 156 |
| Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and<br>Canada.....                 | 123 | Cleaning the Exterior.....  | 156 |
| Ordering Additional Owner's<br>Literature.....                         | 124 | Waxing.....   | 157 |
| Reporting Safety Defects (U.S.<br>Only).....                           | 125 | Cleaning the Engine.....  | 158 |
| Reporting Safety Defects (Canada<br>Only).....                         | 125 | Cleaning the Windows and Wiper<br>Blades.....                     | 158 |
| <b>Fuses</b>   |     | Cleaning the Interior.....  | 159 |
| Fuse Specification Chart.....  | 127 | Cleaning the Instrument Panel and<br>Instrument Cluster Lens..... | 159 |
| Changing a Fuse.....   | 134 | Cleaning Leather Seats.....                                       | 160 |
| <b>Maintenance</b>   |     | Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....                                 | 160 |
| General Information.....   | 136 | Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....                                    | 160 |
| Opening and Closing the Hood.....                                      | 136 | Vehicle Storage.....  | 161 |
| Under Hood Overview.....   | 137 | <b>Wheels and Tires</b>   |     |
| Engine Oil Dipstick.....   | 138 | General Information.....  | 163 |
| Engine Oil Check.....  | 138 | Tire Care.....  | 164 |
| Oil Change Indicator Reset.....  | 138 | Using Snow Chains.....  | 182 |
| Engine Coolant Check.....  | 139 | Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....                              | 183 |
| Automatic Transmission Fluid<br>Check.....                             | 142 | Changing a Road Wheel.....  | 186 |
| Brake Fluid Check.....   | 144 | Technical Specifications.....                                     | 190 |
| Power Steering Fluid Check.....  | 145 | <b>Capacities and Specific-<br/>ations</b>                        |     |
| Washer Fluid Check.....  | 145 | Engine Specifications - 5.4L V8.....                              | 191 |
| Fuel Filter.....   | 145 | Engine Specifications - 6.8L.....                                 | 191 |
| Changing the 12V Battery.....  | 145 | Motorcraft Parts - 5.4L V8.....                                   | 192 |
| Checking the Wiper Blades.....   | 147 | Motorcraft Parts - 6.8L.....                                      | 194 |
| Changing the Wiper Blades.....   | 147 | Vehicle Identification Number.....                                | 195 |
| Adjusting the Headlamps.....   | 148 | Vehicle Certification Label.....                                  | 196 |
| Removing a Headlamp.....   | 150 | Transmission Code Designation.....                                | 196 |
|  |     | Capacities and Specifications - 5.4L<br>V8.....                   | 197 |

# Table of Contents

---

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Capacities and Specifications -<br>6.8L..... | 201 |
|--|-----|

## **Audio System**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| General Information.....                           | 206 |
| Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM.....             | 207 |
| Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/<br>SYNC..... | 208 |
| Digital Radio.....                                 | 210 |
| Satellite Radio.....                               | 212 |
| USB Port.....                                      | 215 |

## **SYNC™**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| General Information.....                   | 216 |
| Using Voice Recognition.....               | 218 |
| Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....           | 221 |
| SYNC™ Applications and Services.....       | 234 |
| SYNC™ AppLink™.....                        | 242 |
| Using SYNC™ With Your Media<br>Player..... | 244 |
| SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....                 | 254 |

## **Accessories**

|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Accessories.....        | 263 |
| Auxiliary Switches..... | 264 |

## **Extended Service Plan (ESP)**

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Extended Service Plan (ESP)..... | 266 |
|----------------------------------|-----|

## **Scheduled Maintenance**

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| General Maintenance Information.....                       | 268 |
| Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....                          | 271 |
| Special Operating Conditions Scheduled<br>Maintenance..... | 273 |
| Scheduled Maintenance Record.....                          | 275 |

## **Appendices**

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| End User License Agreement..... | 286 |
|---------------------------------|-----|

# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

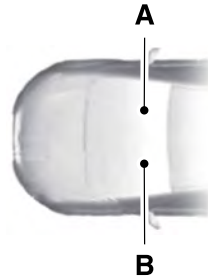
**Note:** This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so they may appear different to you on your vehicle.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Brake fluid - non petroleum based



# Introduction

---



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Check fuel cap



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control



Do not open when hot



Engine air filter



Engine coolant



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten seatbelt



Front airbag



Front fog lamps



Fuel pump reset



Fuse compartment



Hazard warning flashers



Heated rear window



Heated windshield



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Note operating instructions



Panic alarm

# Introduction



Parking aid



Parking brake



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Service engine soon



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Windshield wash and wipe

## DATA RECORDING

### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair

facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, when your vehicle is in for service or repair, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them data for vehicle improvement purposes. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See **SYNC™** (page 216).

### Event Data Recording

**This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.**

**The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling; and**
- **Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.**

# Introduction

---

**This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.**

**Note:** *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

**To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.**

**Note:** *Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature. See SYNC™ (page 216).*

**Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See SYNC™ (page 216).**

# Introduction

## CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

### WARNINGS



Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.



Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling.

## PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, safety belt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

### For more information visit:

| Web Address  |
|--|
| <a href="http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate">www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate</a> |

## FORD CREDIT

### (U.S. Only)

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For your convenience we offer a number of ways to contact us, as well as to help manage your account.

Phone: 1-800-727-7000

For more information regarding Ford Credit, as well as to access Account Manager, please go to [www.fordcredit.com](http://www.fordcredit.com).

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

## Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle

# Introduction

---

development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## SPECIAL NOTICES

### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the Warranty Manual that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

### Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

#### WARNINGS



Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury. See

**Supplementary Restraints System** (page 27).



Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

---

### On-board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle's On-board Diagnostics (OBD-II) system has a data port for diagnostics, repair and reprogramming services with diagnostic scan tools. Installing a non-Ford-approved aftermarket OBD plug-in device that uses the port during normal driving, for example remote insurance company monitoring, remote vehicle diagnostics, telematics or engine reprogramming, may cause interference or damage to vehicle systems. We do not recommend or endorse the use of any non-Ford-approved aftermarket OBD plug-in devices. The vehicle Warranty may not cover damage caused by any non-Ford-approved aftermarket OBD plug-in device.

### Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles

#### WARNING



Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

---

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Manual carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

### Using your Vehicle as an Ambulance

If your light truck is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it may be utilized as an ambulance. Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendations of the Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual, Ford Truck Body Builder's Layout Book and the Qualified Vehicle Modifiers (QVM) Guidelines as well as

# Introduction

---

pertinent supplements. For additional information, please contact the Truck Body Builders Advisory Service at <http://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas/> and then by selecting Contact Us or by phone at 1-877-840-4338.

Use of your Ford light truck as an ambulance, without the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package voids the Ford New Vehicle Limited Warranty and may void the emissions warranties. In addition, ambulance usage without the preparation package could cause high underbody temperatures, over-pressurized fuel and a risk of spraying fuel, which could lead to fires.

If your vehicle is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it will be indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label is located on the driver's side door pillar or on the rear edge of the driver's door. You can determine whether the ambulance manufacturer followed Ford's recommendations by directly contacting that manufacturer.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

## EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

# Environment

---

## **PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

# Child Safety

---

## GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.

### WARNINGS



Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



All children are shaped differently. The recommendations for safety restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, or are the minimum requirements of law. We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and

### WARNINGS

consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in your vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to <http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov>. In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to [www.tc.gc.ca](http://www.tc.gc.ca) to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. On hot days, the temperature in the trunk or vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat-related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

---



# Child Safety

## Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

| Child               | Child size, height, weight, or age  | Recommended restraint type  |
|---------------------|---|---|
| Infants or toddlers | Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).  | Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).  |
| Small children      | Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). | Use a belt-positioning booster seat.  |
| Larger children     | Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).   | Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat back upright. |

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

### Child Seats



E142594

# Child Safety

Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers, or children weighing 40 pounds (18 kilograms) or less (generally age four or younger).

## Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

### WARNINGS



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.



Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.

- Place the vehicle seat upon which the child seat will be installed in the upright position.
- Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

**Note:** *Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.*



E142528

1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



E142529

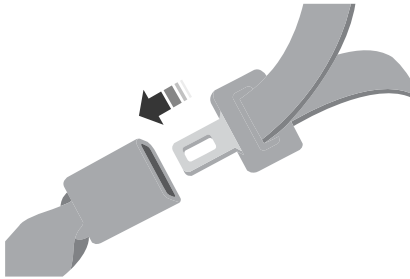
# Child Safety

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



E142531

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



E142875

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.
6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



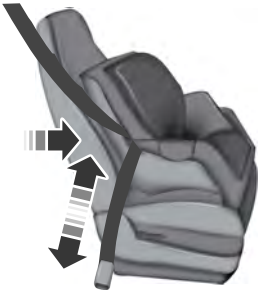
E142533

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is

# Child Safety

necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the extra weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will help to remove remaining slack from the belt.

9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped).



E142534

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place.

To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) of movement for proper installation.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

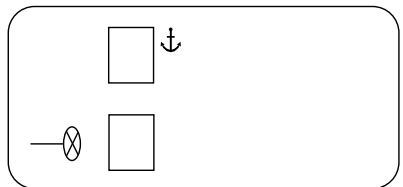
## Using Tether Straps

Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

Attach the tether strap only to the tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

**Note:** Do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:



E190809

You can attach the tether directly to the rear of the front seat.

1. Adjust the front passenger seat fully forward.

# Child Safety



E190810

2. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the front passenger seat as shown.



E190811

3. Clip the tether strap hook to the seat pedestal at the location shown. If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a crash.
4. Adjust the front passenger seat to the full rearward position.
5. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

## BOOSTER SEATS

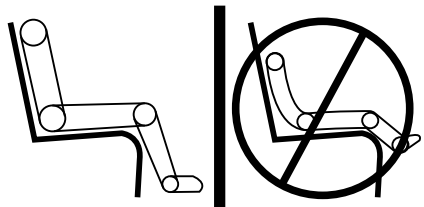
### WARNING



Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 pounds (18 kilograms) and 80 pounds (36 kilograms) and upward to 100 pounds (45 kilograms) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



E142595

# Child Safety

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

## Types of Booster Seats



E68924

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.



E70710

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.

# Child Safety



E142596



E142597

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

## CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

### WARNINGS



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the vehicle seat upon which

### WARNINGS

the child restraint is installed all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.



Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle

# Child Safety

## WARNINGS

manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.



Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash, which may result in serious injury or death.



Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a crash.

## WARNINGS



Always restrain an unoccupied child restraint or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.



Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.



To avoid risk of injury, do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

## Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children

| Restraint Type                 | Use any attachment method as indicated below by X. |                                   |                  |
|--------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|------------------|
|                                | Combined weight of child and child restraint       | Safety belt and top tether anchor | Safety belt only |
| Rear-facing child restraint    | Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)                              |                                   |                  |
| Rear-facing child restraint    | Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)                               |                                   |                  |
| Forward-facing child restraint | Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)                              | X                                 |                  |
| Forward-facing child restraint | Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)                               | X                                 |                  |

**Note:** *The child restraint must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 67).*



# Seatbelts

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



Always drive and ride with the seat backrest upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.



Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash which may result in serious injury or death.



All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.



In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.



Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

### WARNINGS



When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder safety belts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The safety belt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder safety belts.
- Shoulder safety belt with automatic locking mode, (except driver safety belt).
- Height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions.
- Safety belt pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions.



- Safety belt warning light and chime.



- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

# Seatbelts

The safety belt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the safety belt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

## FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

The front outboard safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.



E142587

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.




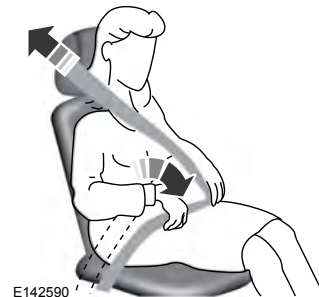
E142588

2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

## Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy

### WARNING

 Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See the following figure.



E142590

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

# Seatbelts

## Safety Belt Locking Modes

### WARNINGS



After any vehicle crash, the safety belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the automatic locking retractor feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.



The belt and retractor assembly must be replaced if the safety belt assembly automatic locking retractor feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in crashes.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver safety belt has the first type of locking mode. The front outboard passenger safety belt has both types of locking modes described as follows:

### Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

### Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

### When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

This mode should be used any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front seating position. See **Child Safety** (page 13).

### How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode



E142591

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

# Seatbelts

## How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

## Safety Belt Extension Assembly

### WARNING



Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, a safety belt extension assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt.

Manufacturer identification is on a label located either at the end of the webbing or on the retractor behind the trim. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

## SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

### WARNING



Position the safety belt height adjuster so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.



E190812

To adjust the shoulder belt height:

1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME



This lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's safety belt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

# Seatbelts

## Conditions of operation

| If...   | Then...   |
|---|---|
| The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...                | The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds. |
| The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding... | The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.                                       |
| The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...                    | The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.                                   |

## CHILD RESTRAINT AND SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), rear inflatable safety belts (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a crash. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.


We recommend that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.


Properly care for safety belts. See **Cleaning the Interior** (page 159).


# Supplementary Restraints System


## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION


### WARNINGS


 Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.


 All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.


 Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

 Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

 Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To avoid risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.

 If the airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the safety belts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

**Note:** *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.


While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.


Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

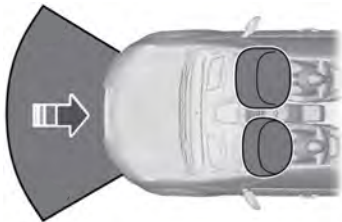
# Supplementary Restraints System

## DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS

### WARNINGS

 Never place your arm or any objects over an airbag module. Placing your arm over a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries. Objects placed on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.


 Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.



E151127


The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
-  Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 33).

## Passenger Airbag On and Off Switch (If Equipped)


### WARNING


 An airbag on and off switch may be installed in this vehicle. Before driving, always look at the face of the switch to be sure the switch is in the proper position in accordance with these instructions and warnings. Failure to put the switch in a proper position can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a crash.


**Note:** *The passenger airbag on and off switch may be on vehicles with no rear seats.*

### Turning the Passenger Airbag Off

### WARNINGS

 If the light fails to illuminate when the passenger airbag switch is off and the ignition is on, have the passenger airbag switch serviced at your authorized dealer immediately.

 In order to avoid inadvertent activation of the switch, always remove the ignition key from the passenger airbag on and off switch.

 An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger airbag. Rear facing infant seats should never be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag is turned off.

# Supplementary Restraints System



E190813

1. Insert the ignition key into the passenger airbag on and off switch, turn the switch to off and hold it in off while removing the key.
2. When the ignition is turned off, the off light illuminates briefly, momentarily shuts off and then turns back on. This indicates that the passenger airbag is deactivated.

## Turning the Passenger Airbag Back On

### WARNINGS



The seatbelts for the driver and right front passenger seating positions have been specifically designed to function together with the airbags in certain types of crashes. When you turn off your airbag, you not only lose the protection of the airbag, you also may reduce the effectiveness of your seatbelt system, which was designed to work with the airbag. If you are not a person who meets the requirements stated in the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration or Transport Canada deactivation criteria turning off the airbag can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a crash.

### WARNINGS



If your vehicle has rear seats, always transport children who are 12 and younger in the rear seat. Always use seatbelts and child restraints properly. Do not place a child in a rear facing infant seat in the front seat unless your vehicle is equipped with an airbag on and off switch and the passenger airbag is turned off. This is because the back of the infant seat is too close to the inflating airbag and the risk of a fatal injury to the infant when the airbag inflates is substantial.



If the off light is illuminated when the passenger airbag switch is in the on position and the ignition switch is in on, have the passenger airbag switch serviced at an authorized dealer immediately.

The passenger airbag remains off until you turn it back on.



E190814

1. Insert the ignition key into the passenger airbag on and off switch and turn the switch to on.
2. The off light will briefly illuminate when the ignition is turned on. This indicates that the passenger airbag is operational.



# Supplementary Restraints System

The passenger side airbag should always be on (the airbag off light should not be illuminated) unless the passenger is a person who meets the requirements stated either in Category 1, 2 or 3 of the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration/Transport Canada deactivation criteria which follows.

The vast majority of drivers and passengers are much safer with an airbag than without. To do their job and reduce the risk of life threatening injuries, airbags must open with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk in some situations, particularly when a front seat occupant is not properly buckled up. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary airbag injuries without reducing the overall safety of the vehicle is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained in the vehicle, especially in the front seat. This provides the protection of seatbelts and permits the airbags to provide the additional protection they were designed to provide. If you choose to deactivate your airbag, you are losing the very significant risk reducing benefits of the airbag and you are also reducing the effectiveness of the seatbelts, because seatbelts in modern vehicles are designed to work as a safety system with the airbags.

## National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Deactivation Criteria (Excluding Canada)

### WARNING



This vehicle has special energy management seatbelts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a crash. The energy management seatbelt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned off, this energy management seatbelt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned on for any person who does not qualify under the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration deactivation criteria.

**1. Infant.** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:

- The vehicle has no rear seat.
- The vehicle has a rear seat too small to accommodate a rear-facing infant seat.
- The infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

**2. Child age 1 to 12.** A child age 1 to 12 must ride in the front seat because:

# Supplementary Restraints System

- The vehicle has no rear seat.
- Although children ages 1 to 12 ride in the rear seat(s) whenever possible, children ages 1 to 12 sometimes must ride in the front because no space is available in the rear seat(s) of the vehicle.
- The child has a medical condition which, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

**3. Medical condition.** A passenger has a medical condition which, according to his or her physician:

- Causes the passenger airbag to pose a special risk for the passenger.
- Makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag in a crash greater than the potential harm from turning off the airbag and allowing the passenger, even if belted, to hit the dashboard or windshield in a crash.

## Transport Canada Deactivation Criteria (Canada Only)

### WARNING



This vehicle has special energy management seatbelts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with airbags to help reduce the risk of injury in a crash. The energy management seatbelt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the airbag is turned off, this energy management seatbelt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the airbag is turned on for any person who does not qualify under the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration deactivation criteria.

**1. Infant:** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:

- My vehicle has no rear seat.
- The rear seat in my vehicle cannot accommodate a rear-facing infant seat.
- The infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the infant's condition.

**2. Child age 12 or under:** A child age 12 or under must ride in the front seat because:

# Supplementary Restraints System

- My vehicle has no rear seat.
- Although children age 12 and under ride in the rear seat whenever possible, children age 12 and under have no option but to sometimes ride in the front seat because rear seat space is insufficient.
- The child has a medical condition that, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the child's condition.

3. **Medical condition:** A passenger has a medical condition that, according to his or her physician:

- Poses a special risk for the passenger if the airbag deploys.
- Makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag deployment greater than the potential harm from turning off the airbag and experiencing a crash without the protection offered by the airbag.

## Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

### WARNING



The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 centimeters) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. Properly seated occupants sit upright, lean against the seat back, and center themselves on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

## Children and Airbags

### WARNING



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.



E142846

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

### WARNING



Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module. The restraints control module deploys (activates) the front safety belt pretensioners, driver airbag and passenger airbag. Based on the type of accident, the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 49). Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The safety belt pretensioners and the airbag supplemental restraint system are designed to activate when the vehicle sustains frontal deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device.

The fact that the safety belt pretensioners or airbags did not activate in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (such as crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The design of the safety belt pretensioners is to activate in frontal or near-frontal crashes and may deploy in rollovers if the vehicle is equipped with roll stability control.

## AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term **IC** before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). Vehicles with the remote start feature will have a greater range. One of the following could cause a decrease in operating range:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around the vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** Make sure to lock your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.

**Note:** The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

## REMOTE CONTROL



E195660

**Note:** If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take all remote entry transmitters with you to an authorized dealer in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.

**Note:** If your vehicle is fitted with the E-Guard Cargo Protection System™, the remote transmitter unlock command only unlocks the front doors. The side or rear cargo doors can only be unlocked from outside your vehicle using the key.

## Reprogramming the Remote Control

You must have all remote controls readily accessible before beginning this procedure. Any remote control that is not present during the programming procedure will no longer operate your vehicle.

# Keys and Remote Controls

**Note:** You can program a maximum of four coded keys to your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not apply the brake pedal during this procedure.

1. Switch the ignition from off to on 8 times within 10 seconds, finishing in the off position. The doors lock then unlock to confirm that programming has started.
2. Press any button on the remote control that you want to program within 20 seconds. The doors lock then unlock to confirm that programming was successful.
3. Repeat step 2 to program each additional remote control.
4. After you have programmed all remote controls, switch the ignition off.
5. The doors lock then unlock to confirm that programming is complete.

## Changing the Remote Control Battery

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.



E195662

1. Twist a thin coin in the slot of the transmitter near the key ring to remove the battery cover.

**Note:** Do not remove the rubber cover and circuit board from the front housing of the remote entry transmitter.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

2. Remove the old battery.

# Keys and Remote Controls



**Note:** The panic alarm operates regardless of the ignition position.

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 40).

E195661

3. Insert the new battery. Refer to the symbols inside the transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
4. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

## Car Finder



Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

## Sounding the Panic Alarm



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

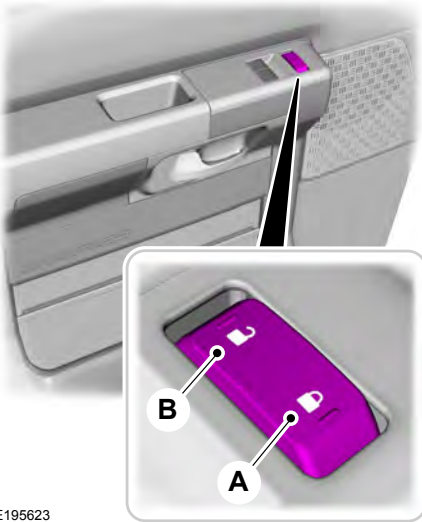
# Locks

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

### Power Door Locks (If Equipped)

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E195623

- A Lock.
- B Unlock.

### Remote Control (If Equipped)

You can use the remote control at any time when the ignition is off.

### Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)



Press the button to unlock the driver door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The direction indicators flash.

**Note:** *The driver door can be unlocked with the key if the remote control is not functioning.*

**Note:** *When you leave your vehicle unattended for several weeks, the remote control turns off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and started. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once enables the remote control.*

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

**Note:** *When you press the unlock button, either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

You can reprogram the unlocking function so that only the driver door is unlocked.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

### Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators flash.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors lock again, the horn sounds and the direction indicators flash if all the doors are closed.

**Note:** *If any door is open, the horn sounds twice and the direction indicators do not flash.*



# Locks

## Autolock Feature

The autolock feature locks all the doors when:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- You shift into any gear putting your vehicle in motion.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

## Autounlock Feature

The autounlock feature unlocks all the doors when:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed and your vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to accessory.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

**Note:** *If you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off with the driver door closed, the doors do not autounlock.*

## Enabling or Disabling Autolock and Autounlock

You can enable or disable the autolock and autounlock features independently of each other.

### To enable or disable autolock, do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the power door unlock control three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press the power door unlock control three times.

5. Switch the ignition on. The horn sounds indicating your vehicle is in programming mode.
6. Press the power door unlock control and within five seconds, press the power door lock control. The horn sounds once if disabled or twice if enabled.
7. Switch the ignition off. The horn sounds indicating programming is complete.

**Note:** *You can also switch this feature on or off using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 55).*

### To enable or disable autounlock, do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the power door unlock control three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press the power door unlock control three times.
5. Switch the ignition on. The horn sounds indicating your vehicle is in programming mode.
6. Press the power door lock control and within five seconds, press the power door unlock control. The horn sounds once if disabled or twice if enabled.
7. Switch the ignition off. The horn sounds indicating programming is complete.

**Note:** *You can also switch this feature on or off using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 55).*

## Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and some exterior lamps illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote control.

# Locks

---

The lamps turn off if:

- The ignition is on.
- You press the remote control lock button.
- 25 seconds have elapsed.

The lamps do not turn off if:

- You switch them on with the lighting control.
- Any door is open.

# Security

---

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

**Note:** *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.*

**Note:** *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting problems if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine if a problem occurs.*

**Note:** *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.*

### SecuriLock®

The system is an engine immobilization system. It is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a correctly coded key for your vehicle is used. Using an incorrectly coded key may prevent the engine from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, a malfunction has happened and a message may appear in the information display.

### Automatic Arming

The engine immobilization system arms immediately after you switch the ignition off.

### Automatic Disarming

Switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key disarms the engine immobilization system.

### Replacement Keys

The integrated keyhead transmitter functions as a programmed ignition key that operates all the locks and starts your vehicle, as well as a remote control.

If your keys are lost or stolen and you do not have a spare correctly coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. You need to erase the coded keys from your vehicle and program new coded keys.

Store an extra correctly coded key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. See an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

**Note:** *Your vehicle comes with two integrated keyhead transmitters.*

### Programming a Spare Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

You can program your own integrated keyhead transmitter or standard SecuriLock coded keys to your vehicle. This procedure will program both the engine immobilizer keycode and the remote entry portion of the remote control to your vehicle.

Only use integrated keyhead transmitters or standard SecuriLock keys.

You must have two previously programmed correctly coded keys and the new unprogrammed key readily accessible. See an authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed correctly coded keys are not available.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

# Security

---

1. Insert the first previously programmed correctly coded key into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Switch the ignition off and remove the first correctly coded key from the ignition.
4. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off, insert the second previously correctly coded key into the ignition.
5. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Switch the ignition off and remove the second previously programmed correctly coded key from the ignition.
7. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off and removing the previously programmed correctly coded key, insert the new unprogrammed key into the ignition.
8. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least six seconds.
9. Remove the newly programmed correctly coded key from the ignition.

If the key has been successfully programmed it will start the engine and operate the remote entry system (if the new key is an integrated keyhead transmitter).


If the key was not successfully programmed, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 8. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

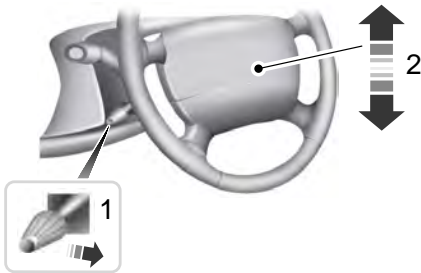
**Note:** *You can program a maximum of eight coded keys to your vehicle. All eight can be integrated keyhead transmitters.*

# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

### WARNING

 Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.



E161517

1. Pull and hold the steering wheel release lever.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position then release the lever.

## VOICE CONTROL (If Equipped)



E193397

Push the control to select or deselect voice control. See your SYNC information.

## CRUISE CONTROL



E161518

See **Cruise Control** (page 91).

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.

**Note:** Make sure the windshield wipers are switched off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that doesn't resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 147).

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.



E207133

Rotate the end of the control:

- away from you to increase the wiper speed.
- toward you to decrease the wiper speed.

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washer before wiping a dry windshield.

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.

Press the end of the stalk to activate the washer.

- A brief press causes a single wipe without washer fluid.
- A quick press and hold causes the wipers to swipe three times with washer fluid.
- A long press and hold will activate the wipers and washer fluid for up to 10 seconds.



E207134

# Lighting

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

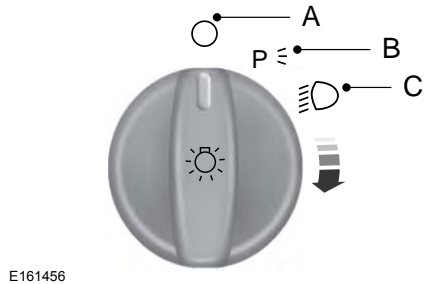
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

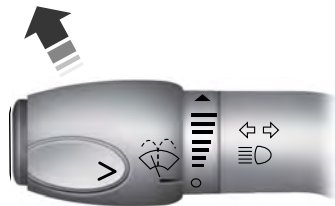
If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## LIGHTING CONTROL



- A Off.
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.
- C Headlamps.

### High Beams



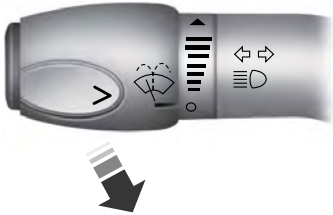
E161457

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

# Lighting

## Headlamp Flasher



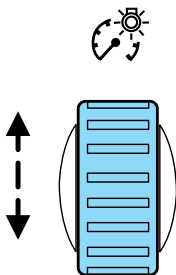
E161458

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

**Note:** If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the dimmer switch will require re-calibration. Rotate the dimmer switch from the full dim position to the full dome/on position to reset.

**Note:** Move the control to the full upright position, past detent, to turn on the interior lamps.



E161459

Move the control up or down to adjust the intensity of the panel lighting.

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (If

Equipped)

### WARNING



Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

The system switches the lamps on in daylight conditions.

To switch the system on, switch the ignition on, and switch the lighting control to the off, autolamp or parking lamp position.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



E161460

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.



# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E163056

**Note:** You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

Press the switch to open the window.

Lift the switch to close the window.

### One-Touch Down

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### Accessory Delay

You can use the window switches for several minutes when you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

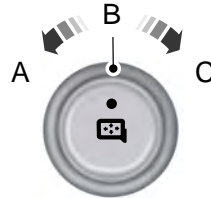
## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power Exterior Mirrors

#### WARNING



Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E163059

- A Left mirror.
- B Off.
- C Right mirror.

To adjust your mirrors:

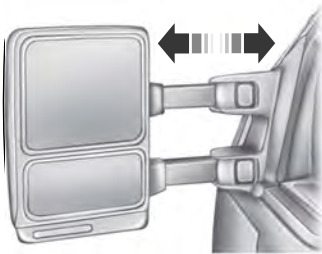
1. Select the mirror you want to adjust.
2. Move the control in the direction you want to tilt the mirror.
3. Return the control to the center position to lock the mirrors in place.

### Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

# Windows and Mirrors

## Telescoping Mirrors (If Equipped)



E163061

This feature lets you extend the mirror about 3 in (75 mm). It is useful when towing a trailer. You can manually pull out or push in the mirrors to the desired position.

## Integrated Blind Spot Mirror (If Equipped)

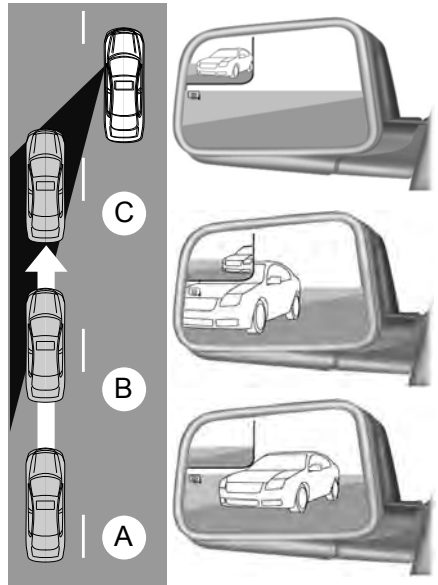
### WARNING



Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They can assist you by increasing visibility along the side of your vehicle. The blind spot mirror is only on the driver exterior mirror.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you are going to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear, and carefully change lanes.



E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image transitions from the main mirror and begins to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle transitions to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

## INTERIOR MIRROR

### WARNING



Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

# Windows and Mirrors

---

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

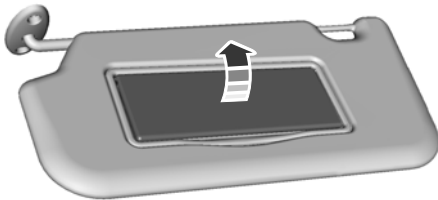
## **Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)**

**Note:** Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

## **SUN VISORS**

### **Illuminated Vanity Mirror (If Equipped)**

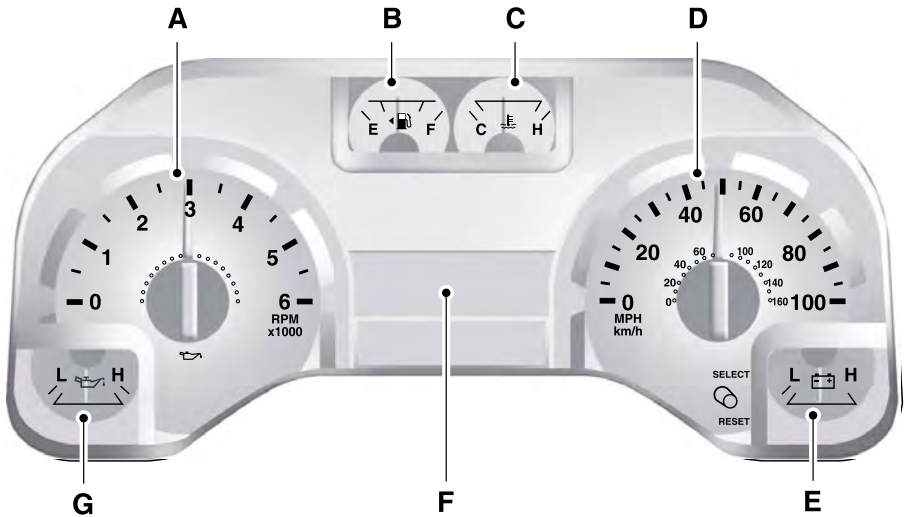


E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES



E194283

- A Tachometer.
- B Fuel gauge.
- C Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- D Speedometer.
- E Battery voltage gauge.
- F Information display. See **Information Displays** (page 55).
- G Engine oil pressure gauge.

### Fuel Gauge

**Note:** *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.*

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge indicates approximately how much fuel you have left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

# Instrument Cluster

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, have an authorized dealer check the system soon.

After refueling, some variability in the position of the needle is normal:

- It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of the pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of the pavement at the gas station.

- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.
- There is a small reserve left in the tank when the fuel gauge reaches empty.

## Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the fuel gauge needle is at one-sixteenth or about 50 miles (80 km) to empty, whichever occurs first.

## Variations:

**Note:** *The low fuel warning and distance-to-empty warning can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

| Driving type (fuel economy conditions)              | Fuel gauge position | Distance-to-empty                      |
|---|---------------------|--|
| Highway driving                                     | 1/16th              | 30 miles to 80 miles (48 km to 129 km) |
| Severe duty driving (trailer towing, extended idle) | 1/16th-1/4          | 10 miles to 35 miles (16 km to 56 km)  |

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

### WARNING



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

## Battery Voltage Gauge

Indicates the battery voltage when the ignition is in the on position. If the pointer moves and stays outside the normal operating range, have an authorized dealer check the vehicle's electrical system as soon as possible.

## Information Display

### Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display, the gauge registers the distance your vehicle travels.

# Instrument Cluster

## Trip Computer

See **Information Displays** (page 55).

## Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **Information Displays** (page 55).

## Engine Oil Pressure Gauge

Indicates the engine oil pressure. The needle should stay in the normal operating range. If the needle falls below the normal range, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level and add oil if needed. If the oil level is correct, have an authorized dealer check the system.

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp but do not display when you start your vehicle.*

## Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without ABS) unless the brake system warning lamp also illuminates. Have an authorized dealer check the system.

## Anti-Theft System



Flashes when the SecuriLock Passive Anti-theft System activates.

## Battery



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have an authorized dealer check the system immediately.

## Brake System



Illuminates when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check to see that you did not engage the parking brake. If you did not engage the parking brake, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have an authorized dealer check the system immediately.

### WARNING



Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

## Check Fuel Cap



Displays when you do not properly install the fuel cap. Continued driving with this light on may cause the service engine soon warning light to come on.

# Instrument Cluster

## Cruise Control (if Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch this feature on. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 91).

## Direction Indicator



Illuminates when you switch on the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.

## Engine Coolant Temperature



Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool.

## Engine Oil



If it illuminates when the engine is running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level.

**Note:** Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have an authorized dealer check the system.

## Fasten Safety Belt



It illuminates and a tone sounds to remind you to fasten your safety belt.

## High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlights on. It flashes when you use the headlamp flasher.

## Low Fuel Level



It illuminates when the fuel level is low or near empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning



It illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

The lamp also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have an authorized dealer check the system.

## Powertrain Malfunction/Electronic Throttle Control



Illuminates when the system detects a powertrain fault, have an authorized dealer check the system as soon as possible.

## Service Engine Soon



If the service engine soon indicator light illuminates after you start the engine, it indicates that the On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II) system detects a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II) in the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced. See **Emission Control System** (page 80).

# Instrument Cluster

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have an authorized dealer check your vehicle immediately.

## WARNING



Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have your vehicle serviced immediately.

The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when you first switch on the ignition prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, the service engine soon light will stay on until you switch the engine on, and then turn off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See **Emission Control System** (page 80).

## Traction Control System



Displays when the traction control is active. If the light remains on, have an authorized dealer check the system immediately.

## Traction Control System Off



It will illuminate when the driver disables traction control.

## Transmission Tow/Haul



Illuminates when the driver activates the tow/haul feature. If the light flashes steadily, have an authorized dealer check the system immediately, damage to the transmission could occur.

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Fail-Safe Cooling Warning Chime

Sounds when the coolant gauge pointer has moved to hot. There are three stages of chimes:

- Stage 1 is a single chime when the engine temperature begins to overheat.
- Stage 2 is multiple chimes and engine power becomes limited in order to help cool the engine.
- Stage 3 is multiple chimes and the engine will shut down.

### Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

### Key in Ignition Warning Chime

Sounds when you open the driver's door and you have left the key in the ignition.

### Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.



# Instrument Cluster

---

## **Shift to Park Warning Chime**

Sounds when you open the driver's door and your vehicle is not in park.

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display control by the speedometer. The corresponding information appears in the information display.

## Base Information Display Control



E194389

Press and release the SELECT/RESET stem, by the speedometer, to choose settings and confirm messages. Select or reset the function by holding the SELECT/RESET stem for more than two seconds.

| Info        |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| TRIP A or B |           |
| ALOC        | On or Off |
| AUnLOC      | On or Off |

## TRIP A or B

Registers the distance of individual journeys.

## Optional Information Display Control



E194389

# Information Displays

Press and release the SELECT/RESET stem, by the speedometer, to choose settings and confirm messages. Select or

reset the function by holding the SELECT/RESET stem for more than two seconds.

| Info                        |
|-----------------------------|
| TRIP A or B                 |
| Miles (km) to E             |
| XX.X AVG MPG (L/100km)      |
| MPG (L/km)                  |
| HOLD RESET FOR SETUP MENU   |
| HOLD RESET FOR SYSTEM CHECK |

## TRIP A or B

Registers the distance of individual journeys.

## Miles (km) to E

This displays an estimate of approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions. Remember to switch the ignition off when refueling to allow this feature to detect the added fuel correctly. Based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km), the system calculates the distance to empty using a running average fuel economy. This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy re-initializes to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

## XX.X AVG MPG (L/100km)

Average fuel economy displays your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/100 km.

## MPG (L/km)

This displays instantaneous fuel economy as a bar graph. Your vehicle must be moving to calculate instantaneous fuel economy. You cannot reset instantaneous fuel economy.

## System check and vehicle feature customization

**Note:** *System check and vehicle feature customization is only available with the optional information display controls.*

**Note:** *When returning to the setup menu and you select a non-English language, you will see a message appear HOLD RESET FOR ENGLISH to change back to English. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to change back to English.*

# Information Displays

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to get into the setup menu sequence for the following displays:



E194389

| <b>Setup</b>                          |                                      |                            |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| OIL LIFE                              |                                      |                            |
| UNITS ENG / METRIC                    | Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem | English or Metric          |
| AUTOLOCK (if equipped)                |                                      | ON or OFF                  |
| AUTOUNLOCK (if equipped)              |                                      | ON or OFF                  |
| COMPASS ZONE (if equipped)            |                                      |                            |
| TBC MODE (if equipped)                | Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem | Electric or EOH            |
| LANGUAGE = ENGLISH / SPANISH / FRENCH |                                      | English / Spanish / French |

| <b>SYSTEM CHECK</b>    |                                      |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| RESET FOR SYSTEM CHECK | Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem | XXX% OIL LIFE                  |
|                        |                                      | ENGINE HOURS (if enabled)      |
|                        |                                      | ENGINE IDLE HOURS (if enabled) |
|                        |                                      | CHARGING SYSTEM                |
|                        |                                      | BRAKE SYSTEM                   |

# Information Displays

| SYSTEM CHECK |  |  |
|--------------|--|--|
|              |  | TBC GAIN = XX.X or NO TRAILER (if equipped)  |
|              |  | TBC GAIN = XX.X or OUTPUT = // (if equipped) |
|              |  | XXX MILES TO E                               |

## OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW

This displays the remaining oil life. An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule. USE ONLY RECOMMENDED ENGINE OILS.

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change, perform the following:

1. Press and release the SELECT/RESET stem to display OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW.
2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem for two seconds and release to reset the oil life to 100%.

**Note:** To change oil life 100% value (if equipped):

3. Once **OIL LIFE SET TO XXX%** displays, release and press the SELECT/RESET stem to change the oil life start value. Each release and press reduces the value by 10%.

## UNITS ENG / METRIC

Displays the current units in English or Metric.

## AUTOLOCK

This feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when you shift into any gear, putting the vehicle in motion.

## AUTOUNLOCK

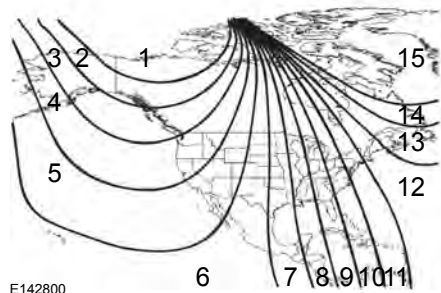
This feature automatically unlocks all vehicle doors when you open the driver's door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off.

## COMPASS (if equipped)

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

**Note:** Driving near large buildings, bridges, power lines and powerful broadcast antennas may affect the compass reading. Magnetic or metallic objects placed in, on or near the vehicle may also affect compass accuracy. If the compass appears to be inaccurate, a manual calibration may be necessary. Refer to **Compass zone adjustment**.

## Compass zone adjustment



# Information Displays

1. Determine which magnetic zone you are in for your geographic location by referring to the zone map.
  2. Press and release the SELECT/RESET stem to scroll through the information displays until the message center displays HOLD RESET FOR SETUP MENU.
  3. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to get into the setup menu. Press repeatedly to scroll through the setup menu until COMPASS ZONE XX appears in the information display.
  4. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem for approximately two seconds to go to the next zone, then release.
  5. Press and hold to go up by one zone then release. Repeat this until you reach the desired zone.
  6. To exit the procedure, release the SELECT/RESET stem and allow the setup timer to expire.
2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem to get into the setup menu. Press it repeatedly to scroll through the setup menu until HOLD RESET FOR CALIBRATION appears in the information display.
  3. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem for approximately two seconds until the information display enters the compass zone adjustment mode.
  4. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET stem until CIRCLE SLOWLY TO CALIBRATE appears in the information display.
  5. Slowly drive the vehicle in a circle less than 3 mph (5 km/h) until the CIRCLE SLOWLY TO CALIBRATE message changes to CALIBRATION COMPLETED. This may require up to five circles to complete the calibration.

## Compass calibration adjustment

**Note:** For optimum calibration, drive to an open, level location away from large metallic objects or structures. Switch off all non-essential electrical accessories (heated rear window, heater, A/C, map lamps, wiper, etc.) and make sure all the doors are closed.

**Note:** If you press the SELECT/RESET stem during the calibration or three minutes elapse since the beginning of the calibration without driving the vehicle, the information display reverts back to normal operation and CAL displays until you complete a successful calibration.

1. Press and release the SELECT/RESET stem to scroll through the information displays until HOLD RESET FOR SETUP MENU appears.

## TBC MODE (if equipped)

Allows you to choose the trailer brake mode.

## LANGUAGE = ENGLISH / SPANISH / FRENCH

Allows you to choose which language appears in the information display.

Waiting four seconds or pressing the SELECT/RESET stem cycles the information display through each of the language choices.

Press the SELECT/RESET stem to set the language choice when the language you want appears.

## HOLD RESET FOR SYSTEM CHECK

The information display begins to cycle through the vehicle systems and provides a status of the item if needed. Some systems show a message only if a condition is present.

# Information Displays

## INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Note:** Depending on the vehicle options equipped with your vehicle, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.

Press the SELECT/RESET stem to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

Certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.

## Brake System

| Message               | Action   |
|-----------------------|--|
| BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW | Indicates the brake fluid level is low, have the brake system inspected immediately.   |
| CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM    | Displays when the brake system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |
| PARK BRAKE ENGAGED    | Displays when the parking brake is set and the vehicle is in motion.   |

## Fuel

| Message                       | Action   |
|-------------------------------|--|
| XXX MILES TO E FUEL LEVEL LOW | Displays as an early reminder of a low fuel condition. |

## Maintenance

| Message                | Action  |
|------------------------|---|
| ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON | Displays when the engine oil life remaining is between 5% and 0%. |
| OIL CHANGE REQUIRED    | Displays when the oil life left reaches 0%.                       |
| OIL LIFE OK            | Displays after you have the oil changed.                          |

# Information Displays

---

## Tire

| <b>Message</b>              | <b>Action</b>  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| LOW TIRE PRESSURE           | Displays when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure.  |
| TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT | Displays when the tire pressure monitoring system malfunctions. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer.   |
| TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT  | Displays when a tire pressure sensor malfunctions, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to the Tire Pressure Monitoring System in the Wheels and Tires chapter for more information. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |

## Traction Control

| <b>Message</b>   | <b>Action</b>  |
|------------------|--|
| Traction Control | Displays when the traction control system detects a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |



# Information Displays

## Trailer

| <b>Message</b>             | <b>Action</b>   |
|----------------------------|---|
| TRAILER BRAKE MODULE FAULT | Displays along with a single tone in response to faults sensed by the TBC. See <b>Essential Towing Checks</b> (page 103).   |
| TRAILER CONNECTED          | Displays when a correct trailer connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) is sensed during a given ignition cycle.  |
| TRAILER DISCONNECTED       | Displays when a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. Disregard this status if your vehicle is not equipped with a factory installed trailer brake controller. This message may appear when you use an aftermarket TBC even when the trailer is connected. |
| WIRING FAULT ON TRAILER    | Displays if there are certain faults in the vehicle wiring and trailer wiring or brake system. See <b>Essential Towing Checks</b> (page 103).   |

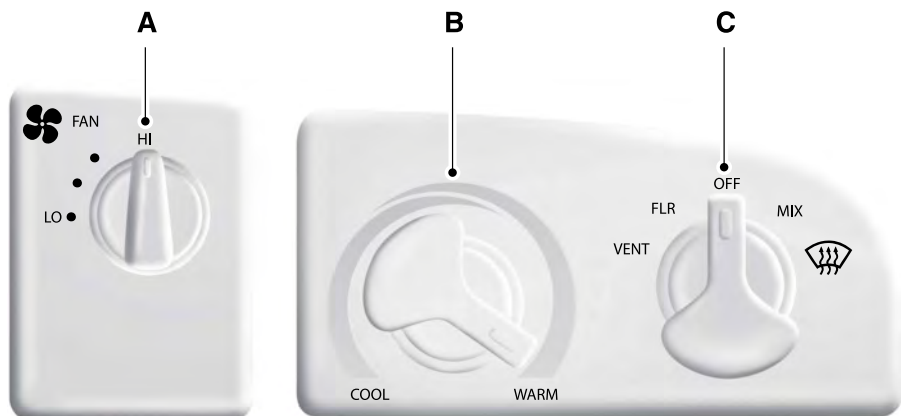
## Transmission

| <b>Message</b> | <b>Action</b>                                       |
|----------------|---|
| SHIFT TO PARK  | A reminder to apply the brakes, then shift to park. |

# Climate Control

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL

### Heater Only System (If Equipped)

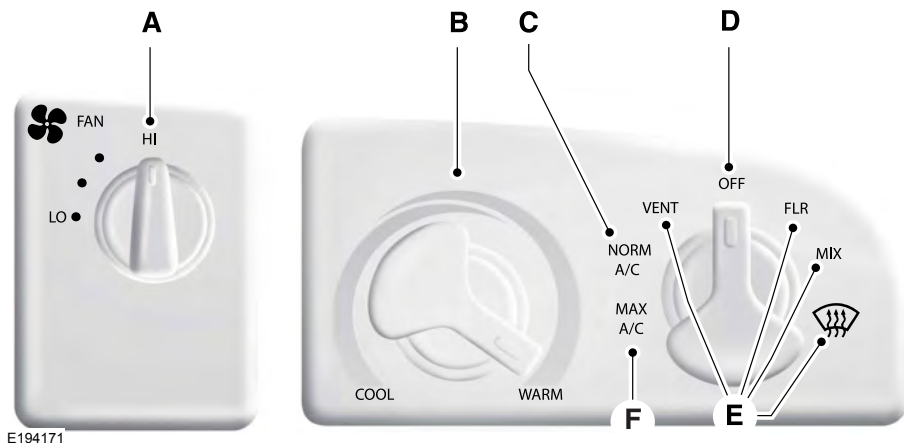


E194172

- A **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- B **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.
- C **Air distribution control:** Adjust to switch airflow from the windshield or footwell vents on or off.

# Climate Control

## Manual Climate Control



E194171

- A **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- B **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.
- C **NORM A/C:** Adjust to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.
- D **OFF:** Adjust to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- E **Air distribution control:** Adjust to switch airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.
- F **MAX A/C:** Adjust for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents and air conditioning automatically turns on.

# Climate Control

---

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

### General Hints

**Note:** *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

**Note:** *A small amount of air may be felt from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

**Note:** *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

**Note:** *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

**Note:** *Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.*

**Note:** *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position. Increase the temperature and fan speed and select the A/C function to improve clearing, if required.*

### Heating the Interior Quickly

- Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.
- Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
- Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell air vents position.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

- Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.
- Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
- Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell and windshield air vents position.

### Cooling the Interior Quickly

- Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.
- Select the **MAX A/C** function.
- Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.

### Recommended Settings for Cooling

- Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.
- Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
- Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.

### Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures

- Apply the parking brake.
- Move the transmission selector lever to position **P** or neutral.
- Adjust the temperature control to the **MAX A/C** position.
- Adjust the fan speed to the lowest speed setting.

# Climate Control

## Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

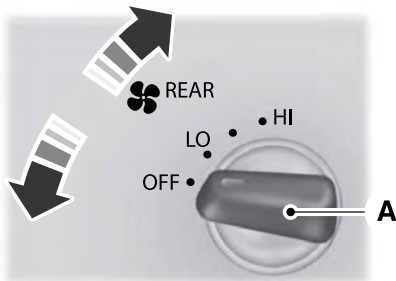
- Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel and windshield air vents positions.
- Select the **A/C** function.
- Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
- Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.

- Direct the instrument panel side air vents toward the side windows.
- Close the instrument panel vents.

## Maximum Cooling Performance in Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel and Footwell Positions

- Adjust the temperature control to the lowest setting.
- Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting initially and then adjust it to suit the desired comfort level.

## REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROLS



E194173

- A **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

# Seats

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

### WARNINGS



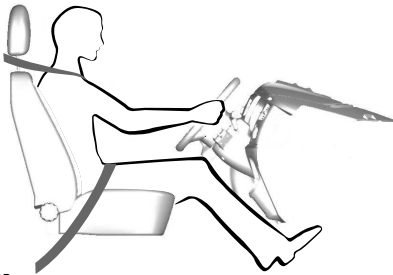
Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



Do not recline the seatback as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.



Do not place objects higher than the seatback to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

### WARNING



To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and operate the vehicle until the seatback is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

# Seats



E190815

The front row outboard non-adjustable head restraints consist of a trimmed foam covering over the upper structure of the seatback. Properly adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position, so that the head restraint is positioned as close as possible to the back of your head.

## MANUAL SEATS

### WARNINGS

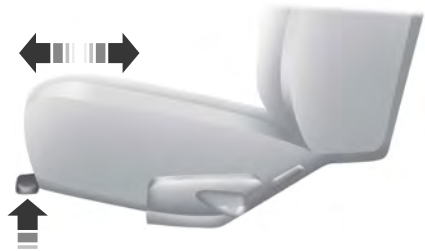


To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and operate the vehicle until the seatback is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.



Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

## Moving the Seat Backward and Forward (If Equipped)



E190816

## Recline Adjustment (If Equipped)

### WARNING



Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to make sure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E190817

# Seats

## Manual Lumbar (If Equipped)



E166702

The lumbar control is located on the inboard side of the driver seat. Turn the control to adjust your support.

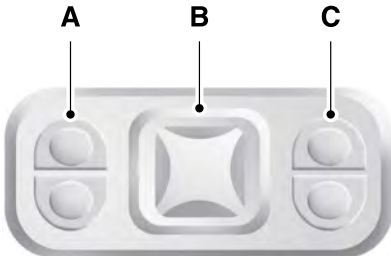
## POWER SEATS (If Equipped)

### WARNING



Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback while your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while the vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of the vehicle.

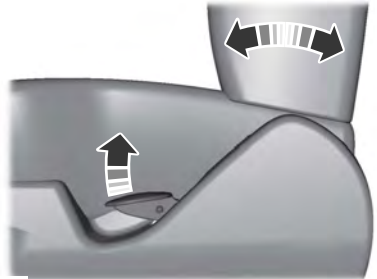
The control is located on the outboard side of the seat cushion.



E190818

- Press A to raise or lower the front portion of the seat cushion.
- Press B to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.
- Press C to raise or lower the rear portion of the seat cushion.

## Recline Adjustment (If Equipped)



E190819



# Auxiliary Power Points

## 12 Volt DC Power Point

### WARNINGS



Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.



Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

**Note:** Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.

**Note:** Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

**Note:** Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the power point and blow the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

## Locations

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- Inside the glove box.
- Behind the driver's seat, upper trim panel.

## 110 Volt AC Power Point (If Equipped)

### WARNING



Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** The power point will turn off when the ignition is switched off or the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.

Use the power point for powering electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.



E194174

To gain access to the outlet contacts, press the plug against the outlet and rotate clockwise.

# Auxiliary Power Points

---

When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is working, the ignition is on and a device is plugged in.
- Off: The power point is off, the ignition is off or no device is plugged in.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNINGS



Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.



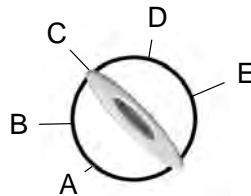
If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

## IGNITION SWITCH



E161572

**A** (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories, such as the radio, to operate while the engine is not running.

**Note:** *Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

**B** (lock) - Locks the gearshift lever and allows key removal.

**C** (off) - The ignition is off.

**Note:** *When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

**D** (on) - All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

**E** (start) - Cranks the engine.

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

Before starting the engine check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).
- Turn the ignition key to the on position.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Turn the key to the start position to start the engine. Release the key when the engine starts.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** If you cannot start the engine on the first try, wait for a short period and try again.

## Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Turn the key to the off position.
3. Apply the parking brake.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

### WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

1. Put the transmission into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) or neutral (N) and switch the ignition off.
3. Apply the parking brake.

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

### WARNING



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods of time, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (3 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (if

Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.



Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

**Note:** *The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).*

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold

temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.

- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

## Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

# Fuel and Refueling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

### WARNINGS



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.



Gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

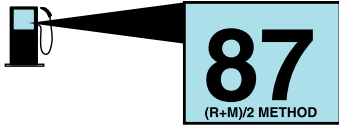
Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. If fuel is splashed on the skin, wash the affected areas immediately with plenty of soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience any adverse reactions.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL QUALITY

### Choosing the Right Fuel



E161513

We recommend regular unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87. Some fuel stations offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. We do not recommend fuels with an octane rating below 87.

For vehicles with EcoBoost engines, to provide improved performance, we recommend premium fuel for severe duty usage such as trailer tow.

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.

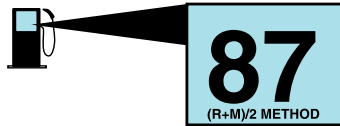
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (using leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

## FUEL QUALITY

### Choosing the Right Fuel - Flex Fuel Vehicles



E161513

Use regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87, or regular unleaded gasoline blended with a maximum of 85% ethanol (E85). Flex fuel vehicles have a yellow fuel filler cap or the fuel tank filler pipe will have a yellow housing or bezel. Some fuel stations offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended.

# Fuel and Refueling

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuels containing more than 85% ethanol or E100 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (using leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel. Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Normally, adding 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If your vehicle is on a steep grade, more fuel may be required.
- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal.

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling.
- Do not fill a fuel container while it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## REFUELING

### WARNINGS



Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.



Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.



Turn off your engine when you are refueling.



Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle.





Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel.





# Fuel and Refueling


## WARNINGS


 Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle. This is against the law in some places.

 Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.

 Do not use personal electronic devices while refueling.

 Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

 Stop refueling after the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the second time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.


 Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:


- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- Do not fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- Do not use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

## Fuel Filler Cap

### WARNINGS

 The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

### WARNINGS

 If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive pressure or vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.

**Note:** *If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford, Motorcraft or other certified fuel filler cap is not used.*

Your fuel tank filler cap has an indexed design with a 1/4th turn on and off feature. When fueling your vehicle:

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).
2. Switch the engine off.
3. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
4. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
5. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
6. Turn the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn clockwise until it clicks at least once.

If the Check Fuel Cap light or a Check Fuel Cap message appears in the instrument cluster and stays on after you start the engine, you may not have installed the fuel filler properly.

# Fuel and Refueling

---

If the fuel cap light remains on, at the next opportunity, safely pull off of the road, remove the fuel filler cap, align the cap properly and reinstall it. The check fuel cap light or Check fuel cap message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the indicators to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by normal city and highway driving.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

Empty reserve is the amount of fuel remaining in the tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty. The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.

- The usable capacity of the fuel tank is the amount of fuel that can be added into the tank after the gauge indicates empty.
- The advertised capacity is the total fuel tank size. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 191). It is the combined usable capacity plus the empty reserve.
- Due to the empty reserve, you may not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank even when the fuel gauge reads empty.

## Filling the Tank

For consistent results when refueling:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than one automatic shut-off when refueling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

## Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period). A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2,000 mi (3,200 km) to 3,000 mi (4,800 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.

To calculate L/100 km (liters per 100 kilometers) fuel consumption, multiply the liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled. To calculate MPG (miles per gallon) fuel consumption, divide miles traveled by gallons used.

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy.

## Conditions

- Heavily loading your vehicle reduces fuel economy.
- Carrying unnecessary weight in your vehicle may reduce fuel economy.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks may reduce fuel economy.

# Fuel and Refueling

- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You will get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

## EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

### WARNINGS



Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover.

The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.



Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter that will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 268).

If you use parts other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements, or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be the equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

# Fuel and Refueling

## On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle has a computer known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. The system protects the environment by making sure that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists a service technician in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate.

Examples of temporary malfunctions are:

- the vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly
- poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly
- the fuel fill inlet may not have closed properly. See **Refueling** (page 77).
- driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

## Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, you may need to have the vehicle serviced. See On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, your vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking

# Fuel and Refueling

---

the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system monitors the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you may need to perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:

Drive on an expressway or highway for a steady 15 minutes, followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you will have to repeat the above driving cycle.

# Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### WARNING



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the transmission is latched in park (P). Turn the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

## Understanding the Shift Positions of the 5-Speed Automatic Transmission

P R N D 3 2 1

E161511

### Putting your vehicle in or out of gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
3. Come to a complete stop.
4. Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in park (P).

### Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning.

### Reverse (R)

With the transmission in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

### Neutral (N)

With the transmission in neutral (N), you can start your vehicle and it is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

### Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through five.

### Third (3)

Transmission operates in third (3) gear only. Use third (3) gear for improved traction on slippery roads.

### Second (2)

Transmission operates in second (2) gear only. Use second (2) gear to start-up on slippery roads.

### First (1)

- Transmission operates in first (1) gear only.
- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- Does not downshift into first (1) gear at high speeds; allows for first (1) gear when vehicle reaches slower speeds.

### Forced downshifts

- Allowed in drive (D) with the tow/haul feature on or off.
- Press the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

# Transmission

## Tow/Haul Mode



To activate tow/haul, press the button on the gearshift lever. The TOW HAUL indicator light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The tow/haul feature:

- Delays upshifts to reduce the frequency of transmission shifting.
- Provides engine braking in all forward gears, which slows your vehicle and assists you in controlling your vehicle when descending a grade.
- Depending on driving conditions and load conditions, may downshift the transmission, slow your vehicle and control your vehicle speed when descending a hill, without pressing the accelerator pedal. The amount of downshift braking provided varies based upon the amount you press the brake pedal.

The tow/haul feature improves transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. All transmission gear ranges are available when using tow/haul.

To deactivate the tow/haul feature and return to normal driving mode, press the button on the gearshift lever again. The TOW HAUL light deactivates. Tow/haul also deactivates when you power down your vehicle.

### WARNING



Do not use the tow/haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and your vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control.

## Understanding the Shift Positions of a 6-Speed Automatic Transmission

P R N D 4 2 1

E198819

### Putting your vehicle in or out of gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
3. Come to a complete stop.
4. Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in park (P).

### Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning.

### Reverse (R)

With the transmission in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

### Neutral (N)

With the transmission in neutral (N), you can start your vehicle and it is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

### Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through six.

# Transmission

## Fourth (4)

Transmission operates in fourth (4) gear only. Used for improved traction on slippery roads.

## Second (2)

Transmission operates in second (2) gear only. Use second (2) gear to start-up on slippery roads.

## First (1)

- Transmission operates in first (1) gear only.
- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- Does not downshift into first (1) gear at high speeds; allows for first (1) gear when vehicle reaches slower speeds.

## Forced downshifts

- Allowed in drive (D) with the tow/haul feature on or off.
- Press the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

## Tow/Haul Mode

**TOW HAUL** To activate tow/haul, press the button on the gearshift lever. The TOW HAUL indicator light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The tow/haul feature:

- Delays upshifts to reduce the frequency of transmission shifting.
- Provides engine braking in all forward gears, which slows your vehicle and assists you in controlling your vehicle when descending a grade.
- Depending on driving conditions and load conditions, may downshift the transmission, slow your vehicle and control your vehicle speed when descending a hill, without pressing the accelerator pedal. The amount of downshift braking provided will vary based upon the amount you press the brake pedal.

The tow/haul feature improves transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. All transmission gear ranges are available when using tow/haul.

To deactivate the tow/haul feature and return to normal driving mode, press the button on the gearshift lever again. The TOW HAUL light deactivates. Tow/haul also deactivates when you power down your vehicle.

## WARNING



Do not use the tow/haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and your vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control.

## Brake-Shift Interlock

### WARNINGS



Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.



# Transmission

## WARNINGS



When doing this procedure, you will be taking your vehicle out of park which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.



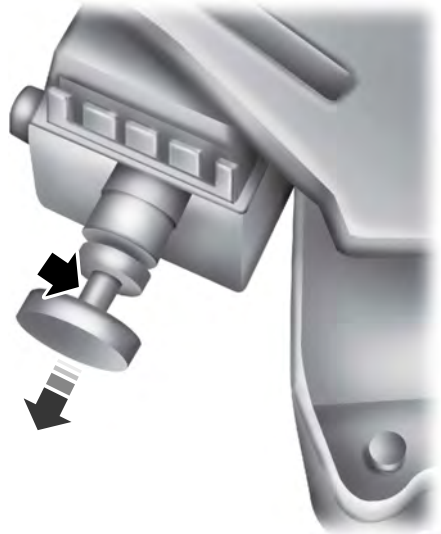
If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

Your vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from moving from park (P) when the ignition is in the 3 (on) position and the brake pedal is not pressed.

If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of park (P) position with the ignition in the 4 (on) position and the brake pedal pressed, a malfunction may have occurred. It is possible that a fuse has blown or your vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 127).

If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure allows you to move the gearshift lever from park (P):

1. Apply the parking brake and turn the ignition on.
2. Use a screwdriver to remove the lower trim panel under the steering column. Make sure not to disturb the wires on the electrical connector.
3. Locate the brake-shift interlock solenoid underneath the steering column.



E204513

4. Pull back on the solenoid, and at the same time, shift the transmission into neutral (N).
5. Start your vehicle.

See your authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.

## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

**Note:** Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

**Note:** Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.

# Transmission

---

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, you may rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

# Brakes

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning the Alloy Wheels** (page 160).



See the Instrument Cluster chapter for information on the brake system warning light.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

### Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Turn the engine off, shift the transmission into park (P), apply the parking brake, and then inspect the accelerator pedal for any interferences. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

### Hydraulic brake booster system (Hydroboost or Hydromax)

The Hydroboost and Hydromax systems receive fluid pressure from the power steering pump to provide power assist during braking.

The Hydromax booster receives backup pressure from the reserve system electric pump whenever the fluid in the power steering system is not flowing. When the engine is off, the pump will turn on if the brake pedal is applied, or if the ignition is turned to the on position.

The sound of the pump operating may be heard by the driver, but this is a normal characteristic of the system.

The reserve system provides reduced braking power, so the vehicle should be operated under these conditions with caution, and only to seek service repair and remove the vehicle from the roadway.

**Note:** For Hydromax-equipped vehicles operating under normal conditions, the noise of the fluid flowing through the booster may be heard whenever the brake is applied. This condition is normal. Vehicle service is not required.

If braking performance or pedal response becomes very poor, even when the pedal is strongly pressed, it may indicate the presence of air in the hydraulic system or leakage of fluid. Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible and seek service immediately.

### HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

**Note:** When the system is operating, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

# Brakes

---

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

To release the parking brake:

- For vehicles equipped with a foot operated parking brake, pull the parking brake release lever.
- For vehicles equipped with a hand operated parking brake, push the parking brake lever down.

## PARKING BRAKE

### WARNING



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the transmission selector lever is placed in park (P).

Failure to set the parking brake and engage park could result in vehicle roll-away, property damage or bodily injury. Turn the ignition to the lock position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

---

Apply the parking brake whenever your vehicle is parked.

- For vehicles equipped with a foot operated parking brake, press the pedal downward to set the parking brake.
- For vehicle equipped with a hand operated parking brake, pull the parking brake lever up to set the parking brake.



The brake warning lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates when the ignition is turned on and the parking brake is applied.

The parking brake is not recommended to stop a moving vehicle. However, if the normal brakes fail, the parking brake can be used to stop your vehicle in an emergency. Your vehicle's stopping distance will increase greatly and the handling of your vehicle will be adversely affected.

# Traction Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

## USING TRACTION CONTROL

### WARNING



The traction control light illuminates steadily if a failure is detected in the system. Verify that the traction control system was not manually disabled using the switch. If the traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

## Switching the System Off



The switch for the traction control system is located on the instrument panel.

When you switch the system off, an illuminated icon appears on the instrument cluster.

Use the switch again to return the traction control system to normal operation.

## System Indicator Lights and Messages



The traction control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes when a driving condition activates the system.



The traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- If a problem occurs in the system.

# Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

## USING CRUISE CONTROL

### WARNINGS



Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

To help the system to maintain the set speed when going downhill, downshift to a lower gear.

**Note:** Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set speed while driving uphill.



E161518

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

## Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release **ON**.



The indicator displays in the instrument cluster.

## Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET ACCEL**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

## Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET ACCEL**. When you select kph as the display measurement in the information display, the set speed changes in approximately 2 kph increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display, the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET ACCEL**.
- Press and hold **SET ACCEL**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

## Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release **COAST** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed will not be erased.

## Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES**.

## Switching Cruise Control Off

Press and release **OFF** when the system is in COAST mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

## STEERING

To help prevent damage to the power steering system:

- Never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than three to five seconds when the engine is running.
- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (below the MIN mark on the reservoir).
- Some noise is normal during operation. If excessive, check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Heavy or uneven efforts may be caused by low power steering fluid. Check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your dealer.
- Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the MAX mark on the reservoir, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir.

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort.

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper vehicle alignment

If any steering components are serviced or replaced, install new fasteners (many are coated with thread adhesive or have prevailing torque features which may not be re-used). Never re-use a bolt or nut. Torque fasteners to specifications.

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

# Load Carrying

## LOAD LIMIT

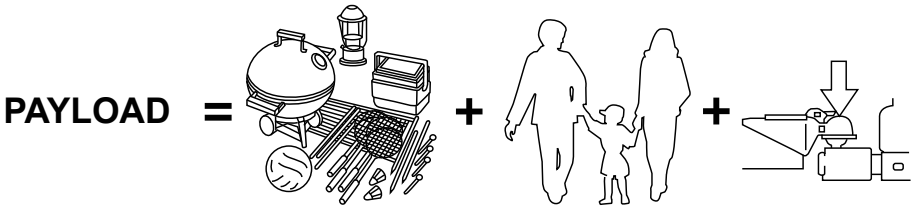
### Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer or both, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with

the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

**Base Curb Weight** - is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle Curb Weight** - is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



E143816

**Payload** - is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX**

**kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment on the vehicle, you must subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.



# Load Carrying

## WARNING



The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

## Example only:

| TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION  |                       |                                    |  |
|---|-----------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| SEATING CAPACITY  |                       | TOTAL 5                            | FRONT 2 REAR 3                               |
| The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : XXX kg or XXX lbs. |                       |                                    |  |
| TIRE  | SIZE                  | COLD TIRE PRESSURE                 | SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION |
| FRONT   | LT225/75R16.5E        | 200 KPA, 29 PSI                    |  |
| REAR  | LT225/75R16.5E        | 200 KPA, 29 PSI                    |  |
| SPARE   | T145/80D16 P225/60R17 | 420 KPA, 60 PSI<br>200 KPA, 29 PSI |  |

E210944

| TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION  |                 |   |  |
|---|-----------------|---|--|
| RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT   |                 |   |  |
| SEATING CAPACITY  |                 | TOTAL 5                                       | FRONT 2 REAR 3   |
| NOMBRE DE PLACES  |                 | AVANT 2                                       | ARRIERE 3  |
| The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 492 kg or 1085 lbs.        |                 |   |  |
| Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 492 kg ou 1085 lbs. |                 |   |  |
| TIRE PNEU   | SIZE DIMENSIONS | COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID | SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION<br>VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS |
| FRONT AVANT   | P235/70R16      | 240 KPA, 35 PSI                               |  |
| REAR ARRIERE  | P235/70R16      | 240 KPA, 35 PSI                               |  |
| SPARE DE SECOURS  | T145/90R17      | 415 KPA, 60 PSI                               |  |

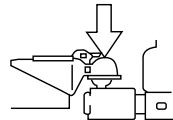
E210945

CARGO

=



+



E143817

# Load Carrying

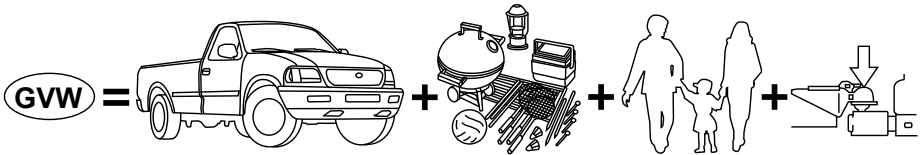
**Cargo Weight** - includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** - is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** - is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance

Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position. **The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.**

**Note:** For trailer towing information refer to the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* available at an authorized dealer.



E143818

**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** - is the Vehicle Curb Weight, plus cargo, plus passengers.

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** - is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). It is shown on the

Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position. **The Gross Vehicle Weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**

# Load Carrying


## Example only:

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.

DATE: XX/XX GVWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)  
 FRONT GAWR: REAR GAWR:  
 XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH  
 TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES  
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS  
 AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX  
 TYPE: XXXX XXXXX




EXT PNT: XX XXXXXX RC: XX DSO: XXXX  
 WB INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXX  
 XXX XX XXX X XX X XXXX XXXX  
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXXXX-XX

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.

DATE: xx/xx GVWR/PNBV: xxxxx LB/xxxxx KG  
 FRONT GAWR/PNBE AV / REAR GAWR/ PNBE AR  
 xxxxx /xxxxx B / xxxxx KG/xxxxx B  
 WITH/AVEC TIRES/PNEUS  
 xxxxx /xxxxxx  
 xxxxx /xxxxxx  
 xxxxx RIMS/JANTES xxxxxxx

AT/A kPa/PSI/LPC xxx/xx COLD/A FROID xxx/xx  
 /JUMEELES


VIN: xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxxxxx  
 TYPE: xxx/xxxxx COMPLETES: xxxxx/xxxx -xxxx xxxxxx



EXT PNT: 01  
 WB INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR xxxxxx  
 xxx xx x xx x xxxxx xxx  
 xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx xxx xxxxx-xxxxxxxx-xx

E198828

## WARNING

 Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

GCW = GVW +



E143819

# Load Carrying

---

## **GCW (Gross Combined Weight)**

- is the Gross Vehicle Weight plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

## **GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)**

- is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.)

Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle. **The Gross Combined Weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.**

## **Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight**

- is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with mandatory options, driver and front passenger weight (150 pounds [68 kilograms] each), no cargo weight (internal or external) and a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer). Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information.

## **Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight**

- refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

**Examples:** For a 5000 pound (2268 kilogram) conventional trailer, multiply 5000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 pounds (227 to 340 kilograms). For an 11500 pound (5216 kilogram) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1725 to 2875 pounds (782 to 1304 kilograms).

## **WARNINGS**



Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

---

## **Steps for determining the correct load limit:**

# Load Carrying

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. ( $1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650$  lb.).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

\*Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kilograms.

\*Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would

# Load Carrying

---

be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (12 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (9 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

## Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles

### WARNING



Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

---

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.

# Towing

---

## TOWING A TRAILER

### WARNINGS



Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating or the Gross Axle Weight Rating specified on the certification label.



Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of the vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

---

Your vehicle may have electrical items, for example fuses or relays, related to towing. See **Fuses** (page 127).

Your vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading your vehicle.

Towing a trailer places an extra load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components periodically during, and after, any towing operation.

## Load Placement

To help minimize how trailer movement affects your vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items centered between the left and right side trailer tires.
- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- Select a tow bar with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward your vehicle, when viewed from the side.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight. Additional information regarding correct trailer loading and setting your vehicle up for towing is located in another chapter of this Owner's Manual. See **Load Limit** (page 93). You can also find the information in the RV & Trailer Towing Guide. See an authorized dealer.

# Towing

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL (if

Equipped)

### WARNING



Switching off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. We do not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental, for example ascending a grade, and the driver has significant trailer towing experience and can control trailer sway to maintain safe operation.

This feature applies your vehicle's brakes at individual wheels and, if necessary, reduces engine power. If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control light flashes and a message appears in the information display.

| Message                      | Action  |
|------------------------------|---|
| Trailer sway<br>Reduce speed | Slow your vehicle down, then pull safely to the side of the road and check for correct tongue load and trailer load distribution. See <b>Load Carrying</b> (page 93). |

**Note:** This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.

**Note:** This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.

**Note:** In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times to gradually reduce vehicle speed.

## RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

**Note:** Make sure to take into consideration trailer frontal area. Vehicles equipped with the Trailer Tow Package or the Heavy Duty Payload Package should not exceed 60 ft<sup>2</sup> (5.6 m<sup>2</sup>) trailer frontal area.

**Note:** Exceeding this limitation may significantly reduce the performance of your towing vehicle. Selecting a trailer with a low aerodynamic drag and rounded front design helps optimize performance and fuel economy.

**Note:** For high altitude operation, reduce the gross combined weight by 2% per 1,000 ft (300 m) starting at the 1,000 ft (300 m) elevation point.

**Note:** Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight. The maximum trailer weights listed may be limited to this specified weight, as your vehicle's electrical system may not include the wiring connector needed to use electric trailer brakes.

Your vehicle may tow a trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your vehicle configuration on the following charts.



# Towing

| <b>E-350</b>  |                        |                     |                                      |
|---|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>Variant</b>  | <b>Rear Axle Ratio</b> | <b>Maximum GCWR</b> | <b>Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight</b> |
| 5.4L Cutaway Single Rear Wheel                        | 4.10                   | 13000 lb (5896 kg)  | 8000 lb (3629 kg)                    |
| 6.8L Cutaway Single Rear Wheel                        | 4.10                   | 18500 lb (8391 kg)  | 10000 lb (4536 kg)                   |
| 5.4L Cutaway Dual Rear Wheel                          | 4.10                   | 13000 lb (5896 kg)  | 7700 lb (3493 kg)                    |
| 6.8L Cutaway Dual Rear Wheel                          | 4.10                   | 18500 lb (8391 kg)  | 10000 lb (4536 kg)                   |
| 5.4L Stripped Chassis 138 inch wheelbase              | 4.10                   | 13000 lb (5896 kg)  | 8400 lb (3810 kg)                    |
| 6.8L Stripped Chassis 138 inch wheelbase              | 4.10                   | 18500 lb (8391 kg)  | 10000 lb (4536 kg)                   |
| 5.4L Stripped Chassis 158 inch and 176 inch wheelbase | 4.10                   | 13000 lb (5896 kg)  | 8300 lb (3765 kg)                    |
| 6.8L Stripped Chassis 158 inch and 176 inch wheelbase | 4.10                   | 18500 lb (8391 kg)  | 10000 lb (4536 kg)                   |

## Towing

| <b>E-450</b>          |                        |                     |                                      |
|-----------------------|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>Variant</b>        | <b>Rear Axle Ratio</b> | <b>Maximum GCWR</b> | <b>Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight</b> |
| 5.4L Cutaway          | 4.56                   | 14050 lb (6373 kg)  | 8500 lb (3856 kg)                    |
| 6.8L Cutaway          | 4.56                   | 22000 lb (9979 kg)  | 10000 lb (4536 kg)                   |
| 5.4L Stripped Chassis | 4.56                   | 14050 lb (6373 kg)  | 9200 lb (4173 kg)                    |
| 6.8L Stripped Chassis | 4.56                   | 22000 lb (9979 kg)  | 10000 lb (4536 kg)                   |

**Note:** Do not exceed trailer weight of 5000 lb (2268 kg) when towing with the bumper only.

### Calculating the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight for Your Vehicle

1. Start with the gross combined weight rating for your vehicle model and axle ratio. See the previous charts.
2. Subtract all of the following that apply to your vehicle:
  - Vehicle curb weight.
  - Hitch hardware weight, such as a draw bar, ball, locks or weight distributing hardware.
  - Driver weight.
  - Passenger(s) weight.
  - Payload, cargo and luggage weight.
  - Aftermarket equipment weight.

This equals the maximum loaded trailer weight for this combination.

**Note:** The trailer tongue load is considered part of the payload for your vehicle. Reduce the total payload by the final trailer tongue weight.

**Note:** Consult an authorized dealer to determine the maximum trailer weight allowed for your vehicle if you are not sure.

### ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,000 mi (1,600 km).
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.

# Towing

- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information.
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

See **Load limits** in the Load Carrying chapter for load specification terms found on the tire label and Safety Compliance label and instructions on calculating your vehicle's load.

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

## Trailer Towing Connector



E163167

When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions. Some seven-position connectors may have the SAE J2863 logo, which confirms that it is the proper wiring connector and works correctly with your vehicle.

| Color  | Function                       |
|--------|--------------------------------|
| Yellow | Left turn signal and stop lamp |
| White  | Ground (-)                     |
| Blue   | Electric brakes                |


| Color  | Function                        |
|--------|---------------------------------|
| Green  | Right turn signal and stop lamp |
| Orange | Battery (+)                     |
| Brown  | Running lights                  |
| Grey   | Reverse lights                  |

## Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle. You must distribute the load in your trailer so that 10-15% of the total weight of the trailer is on the tongue.

## Weight-distributing Hitches

### WARNING

 Do not adjust a weight-distributing hitch to any position where the rear bumper of the vehicle is higher than it was before attaching the trailer. Doing so will defeat the function of the weight-distributing hitch, which may cause unpredictable handling, and could result in serious personal injury.

When hooking-up a trailer using a weight-distributing hitch, always use the following procedure:

1. Park the loaded vehicle, without the trailer, on a level surface.
2. Measure the height to the top of your vehicle's front wheel opening on the fender. This is H1.
3. Attach the loaded trailer to your vehicle without the weight-distributing bars connected.
4. Measure the height to the top of your vehicle's front wheel opening on the fender a second time. This is H2.

# Towing

5. Install and adjust the tension in the weight-distributing bars so that the height of your vehicle's front wheel opening on the fender is approximately half the way down from H2, toward H1.
6. Check that the trailer is level or slightly nose down toward your vehicle. If not, adjust the ball height accordingly and repeat Steps 2-6.

When the trailer is level or slightly nose down toward the vehicle:

- Lock the bar tension adjuster in place.
- Check that the trailer tongue securely attaches and locks onto the hitch.
- Install safety chains, lighting, and trailer brake controls as required by law or the trailer manufacturer.

## Safety Chains


**Note:** *Do not attach safety chains to the bumper.*

Always connect the safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.

To connect the safety chains, cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

## Trailer Brakes

### WARNING

 Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.


Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

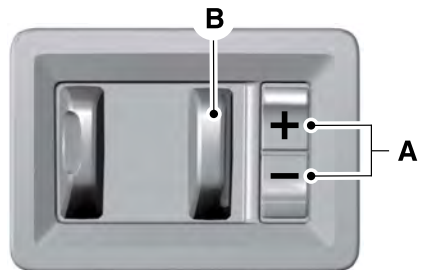
**The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.**

**Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 1500 pounds (680 kilograms) when loaded.**

### Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

#### WARNING

 The Ford trailer brake controller has been verified to be compatible with trailers having electric-actuated drum brakes (one to four axles) and electric-over-hydraulic brakes. It will not activate hydraulic surge-style trailer brakes. It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the trailer brakes are adjusted appropriately, functioning normally and all electric connections are properly made. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.



E183395

# Towing

When used properly, the trailer brake controller assists in smooth and effective trailer braking by powering the trailer's electric or electric-over-hydraulic brakes with a proportional output based on the towing vehicle's brake pressure.

The controller user interface consists of the following:

**A:** + and - (Gain adjustment buttons): Pressing these buttons adjusts the controller's power output to the trailer brakes in 0.5 increments. You can increase the gain setting to 10.0 (maximum trailer braking) or decrease it to 0 (no trailer braking). The gain setting displays in the message center.

The controller shows gain setting, output bar graph, and trailer connectivity status in the information display. They appear in the information display as follows:

- **Trailer Brake Controller Gain** (without trailer connected): Shows the current gain setting during a given ignition cycle and when adjusting the gain. This also displays if you use the manual control lever or make gain adjustments with no trailer connected.
- **Trailer Brake Controller Gain Output:** Displays when you push your vehicle's brake pedal, or upon use of the manual control. Bar indicators illuminate in the information display to indicate the amount of power going to the trailer brakes relative to the brake pedal or manual control input. One bar indicates the least amount of output; six bars indicate maximum output.

- **Trailer Connected:** Displays when the system senses a correct trailer wiring connection (a trailer with electric trailer brakes) during a given ignition cycle.
- **Trailer Disconnected:** Displays, accompanied by a single audible time, when the system senses a trailer connection and then a disconnection, either intentional or unintentional, during a given ignition cycle. It also displays if a truck or trailer-wiring fault occurs causing the trailer to appear disconnected. This message can also display if you use the manual control lever without a trailer connected.

**B:** Manual control lever: Slide the control lever to the left to switch on the trailer's electric brakes independent of the tow vehicle's. See the following **Procedure for Adjusting Gain** section for instructions on proper use of this feature. If you use the manual control while the brake is also applied, the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.

- **Stop lamps:** Using the manual control lever illuminates both the trailer brake lamps and your vehicle brake lamps except the center high-mount stop lamp, if you make the proper electrical connection to the trailer. Pressing your vehicle brake pedal also illuminates both trailer and vehicle brake lamps.

## Procedure for Adjusting Gain

**Note:** Only perform this procedure in a traffic-free environment at speeds of approximately 20-25 mph (30-40 km/h).

The gain setting sets the trailer brake controller for the specific towing condition. You should change the setting as towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

# Towing

The gain should be set to provide the maximum trailer braking assistance while making sure the trailer wheels do not lock when using the brakes. Locked trailer wheels may lead to trailer instability.

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.
2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.
3. When you plug in a trailer with electric or electric-over-hydraulic brakes, a message confirming connection appears in the information display.
4. Use the gain adjustment (+ and -) buttons to increase or decrease the gain setting to the desired starting point. A gain setting of 6.0 is a good starting point for heavier loads.
5. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20-25 mph (30-40 km/h) and squeeze the manual control lever completely.
6. If the trailer wheels lock up, indicated by squealing tires, reduce the gain setting. If the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the gain setting. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until the gain setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lock-up. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lock-up may not be attainable even with the maximum gain setting of 10.

## **Explanation of Information Display Warning Messages**

**Note:** *An authorized dealer can diagnose the trailer brake controller to determine exactly which trailer fault has occurred. However, your Ford warranty does not cover this diagnosis if the fault is with the trailer.*

A message indicating a trailer brake module fault may display in response to faults sensed by the trailer brake controller, accompanied by a single tone. If this message appears, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible for diagnosis and repair. The controller may still function, but performance may be degraded.

A message indicating a trailer wiring fault may display when there is a short circuit on the electric brake output wire. If this message displays, accompanied by a single tone, with no trailer connected, the problem is with your vehicle wiring between the trailer brake controller and the 7-pin connector at the bumper. If the message only displays with a trailer connected, the problem is with the trailer wiring. Consult your trailer dealer for assistance. This can be a short to ground (such as a chaffed wire), short to voltage (such as a pulled pin on trailer emergency breakaway battery) or the trailer brakes may be drawing too much current.

## **Points to Remember**

**Note:** *Do not attempt removal of the trailer brake controller without consulting the Workshop Manual. Damage to the unit may result.*

- Adjust gain setting before using the trailer brake controller for the first time.
- Adjust gain setting, using the procedure above, whenever road, weather and trailer or vehicle loading conditions change from when the gain was initially set.
- Only use the manual control lever for proper adjustment of the gain during trailer setup. Misuse, such as application during trailer sway, could cause instability of trailer or tow vehicle.

# Towing

- Avoid towing in adverse weather conditions. The trailer brake controller does not provide anti-lock control of the trailer wheels. Trailer wheels can lock up on slippery surfaces, resulting in reduced stability of trailer and tow vehicle.
- The trailer brake controller is equipped with a feature that reduces output at vehicle speeds below 11 mph (18 km/h) so trailer and vehicle braking is not jerky or harsh. This feature is only available when applying the brakes using your vehicle's brake pedal, not the controller.
- The controller interacts with the brake control system and powertrain control system of your vehicle to provide the best performance on different road conditions.
- Your vehicle's brake system and the trailer brake system work independently of each other. Changing the gain setting on the controller does not affect the operation of your vehicle's brakes whether you attach a trailer or not.
- When you switch the engine off, the controller output is disabled and the display and module shut down. The controller module and display turn on when you switch the ignition on.
- The trailer brake controller is only a factory-installed or dealer-installed item. Ford is not responsible for warranty or performance of the controller due to misuse or customer installation.

## Trailer Lamps

### WARNING



Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, direction indicators and hazard lights are working.

## Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

## When Towing a Trailer

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 mi (800 km).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 mi (80 km).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the gearshift in position **P** to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Switch off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.

# Towing

---

- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- If your vehicle is equipped with AdvanceTrac with RSC, this system may turn on during typical cornering maneuvers with a heavily loaded trailer. This is normal. Turning the corner at a slower speed while towing may reduce this tendency.
- If you are towing a trailer frequently in hot weather, hilly conditions, at the gross combined weight rating (or any combination of these factors), consider refilling your rear axle with synthetic gear lubricant. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 191).
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade:
  1. Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.
  2. Set your vehicle parking brake.
  3. Place the automatic transmission in position **P**.
  4. Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. (Chocks not included with vehicle.)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a temporary or conventional spare tire. A "temporary" spare tire is different in size (diameter or width), tread-type (All-Season or All Terrain) or is from a different manufacturer than the road tires on your vehicle. Consult information on the tire label or Safety Compliance label for limitations when using.

## Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)

**Note:** *Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water.*

**Note:** *Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after removing the trailer from the water.*

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

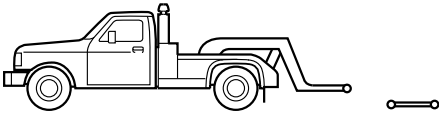
- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water. Water may have contaminated the rear axle lubricant, which is not normally checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or other axle repair is required.



# Towing

## TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



Do not exceed a maximum distance of 50 miles (80 kilometers) and maximum speed of 35 mph (56 km/h) when towing your vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground. If you must exceed the maximum distance or speed, a qualified technician must remove the driveshaft. This prevents transmission damage.

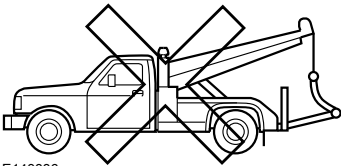
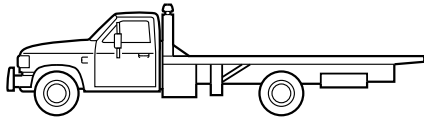
## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### Emergency Towing

#### WARNING



If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.



E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider. When calling for a tow truck, let the operator know what kind of vehicle you have.

It is advisable to have your vehicle towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

You can flat-tow (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain or transmission configuration) your disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies or vehicle transport trailer) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so you tow it in a forward direction.
- You shift into Neutral (N). If you cannot shift into Neutral (N), you may need to override the transmission. See **Transmission** (page 83).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

### Recreational Towing

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 63).

# Towing

---

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are to make sure you do not damage the transmission during towing.

Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground, for example when using a vehicle transport trailer. Otherwise, you cannot tow your vehicle.

# Driving Hints

## BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 miles (480 kilometers). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Do not tow during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).

## REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

### WARNING



Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and cause the engine to shut down completely.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 49).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine will continue to operate with limited power for a short time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine will reduce. The air conditioning will switch off and the engine cooling fan will operate continually.

1. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Switch the engine off immediately to prevent severe engine damage.
3. Wait for the engine to cool down.

4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 139).
5. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Fuel economy is affected by several things such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under and how you maintain your vehicle.

There are some things to keep in mind that may improve your fuel economy:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds.
- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving (When running errands, go to the furthest destination first and then work your way back home).
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds.
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

There are also some things you may want to avoid doing because they reduce your fuel economy:

- Avoid sudden or hard accelerations.
- Avoid revving the engine before turning off the car.
- Avoid long idle periods.
- Do not warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Reduce the use of air conditioning and heat.

# Driving Hints

- Avoid using speed control in hilly terrain.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary weight.
- Avoid adding particular accessories to your vehicle (e.g. bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks).
- Avoid driving with the wheels out of alignment.

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER

### WARNING

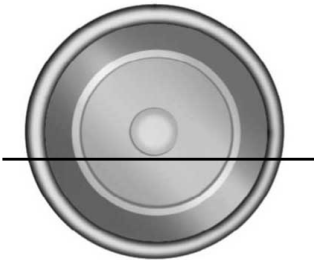


Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel hubs.



E176913

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

## FLOOR MATS

### WARNINGS



Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.



Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.





Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.


# Driving Hints


---

## WARNINGS

 Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

 Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

 Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

 Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.

---



E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

# Roadside Emergencies

---

## ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24 hours a day, seven days a week.
- For the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner's Manual portfolio.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- A flat tire change with a good spare, if provided with the vehicle (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall deliver up to 2 gal (7.6 L) of gasoline or 5 gal (18.9 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30.5 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall tow Ford eligible vehicles to an authorized dealer within 35 mi (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest

authorized dealer. If a member requests a tow to an authorized dealer that is more than 35 mi (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 mi (56 km).

Roadside Assistance includes up to \$200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is in the owner's information portfolio in the glove compartment.

United States Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 mi (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers need to submit their original receipts.

### Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

# Roadside Emergencies

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, but the coverage is concurrent with the powertrain coverage period of your vehicle.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

## Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference.

In Canada, this card is found in the Warranty Guide in the glove compartment of your vehicle.

## Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.

For complete program coverage details you may contact your dealer, you can call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

**Note:** *The hazard warning flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition. If used when the engine is not running, the battery will lose charge. As a result, there may be insufficient power to restart your engine.*



E161463

The hazard flasher control is located on the steering column, just behind the steering wheel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction indicators flash.
- Press the flasher control again to turn them off.

## FUEL SHUTOFF

### WARNING



Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

# Roadside Emergencies

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

**Note:** When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.

**Note:** In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### WARNINGS



Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

## Preparing Your Vehicle

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle.

**Note:** Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

**Note:** Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

## Connecting the Jumper Cables

### WARNINGS



Do not attach the cables to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points. Stay clear of moving parts. To avoid reverse polarity connections, make sure that you correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on both the disabled and booster vehicles before connecting the cables.



Do not attach the end of the positive cable to the studs or L-shaped eyelet located above the positive (+) terminal of your vehicle's battery. High current may flow through and cause damage to the fuses.



Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

**Note:** In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.



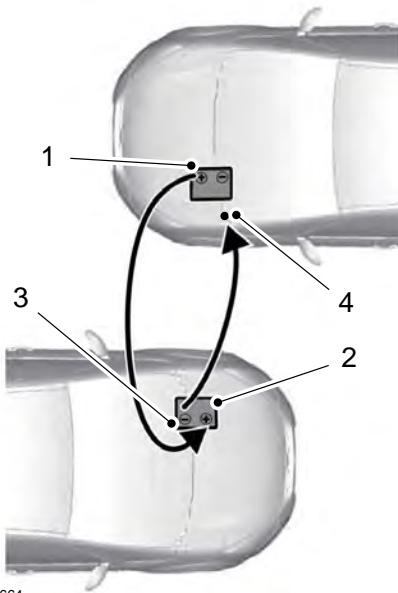
# Roadside Emergencies

## Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

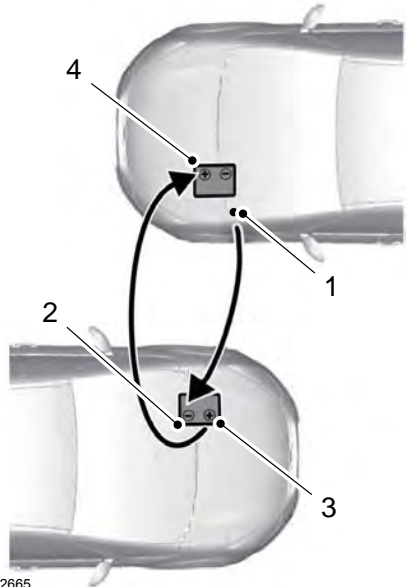
## Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) cable to a ground connection point if available.



E142665

1. Remove the negative (-) jumper cable from the disabled vehicle.

## Roadside Emergencies

---

2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle battery.
5. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

# Customer Assistance

## GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

#### Mailing address

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48126

#### Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired:  
1-800-232-5952)

Additional information and resources are available online:

| Website  |
|--|
| <a href="http://www.owner.ford.com">www.owner.ford.com</a> |

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State or Zip Code.
- Owner Manuals.
- Maintenance Schedules.
- Recalls.
- Ford Extended Service Plans.
- Ford Genuine Accessories.
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

#### Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6K 0C8

#### Telephone

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

| Website                                      |
|--|
| <a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a> |

#### Twitter

@FordServiceCA (English Canada)  
@FordServiceQC (Quebec)

#### Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling or servicing authorized dealer.

# Customer Assistance

---

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states within the United States, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws, and Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt.

Additionally, in some states within the United States, a consumer has the option of submitting a warranty dispute to the BBB Auto Line before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

## IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18000 miles (29 000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126

# Customer Assistance

---

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

## **THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)**

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE  
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600  
Arlington, Virginia 22201**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

# Customer Assistance

---

## UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

## GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
Customer Relationship Center  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.  
Telephone: (313) 594-4857  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
Email: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)

## Customer Assistance

---

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
Customer Relationship Center  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.  
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)  
FAX: (313) 390-0804  
Email: prcac@ford.com  
www.ford.com.pr

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
Customer Relationship Center  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.

**Ford:** 80004443673  
**Lincoln:** 80004441067  
**If calling from the UAE:** 80004441066  
**If calling from the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia:** 8008443673  
**If calling from Kuwait:** 22280384

FAX: +971 4 3327266  
Email: menacac@ford.com  
www.me.ford.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations & Global Growth Initiatives by emailing **expcac@ford.com**.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

**Customers in the U.S. should call  
1-800-392-3673.**

### ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED  
47911 Halyard Drive  
Plymouth, Michigan 48170  
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

www.helminc.com

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

# Customer Assistance

---

## **Obtaining a French Owner's Manual**

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

## **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)**



E142557

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator  
1200 New Jersey Avenue,  
Southeast  
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

## **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)**

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.



# Customer Assistance

---

| <b>Transport Canada Contact Information</b> |  |
|---|--|
| Website                                     | <a href="http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safevehicles-defectinvestigations-index-76.htm">www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safevehicles-defectinvestigations-index-76.htm</a> (English) |
| Website                                     | <a href="http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/secureteautomobile/VehiculesSecuritaires-Enquetes-index-76.htm">www.tc.gc.ca/fra/secureteautomobile/VehiculesSecuritaires-Enquetes-index-76.htm</a> (French)        |
| Phone                                       | 1-800-333-0510   |

| <b>Ford of Canada Contact Information</b> |  |
|---|--|
| Website                                   | <a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a> |
| Phone                                     | 1-800-565-3673                               |

# Fuses

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Power Distribution Box

#### WARNINGS



Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

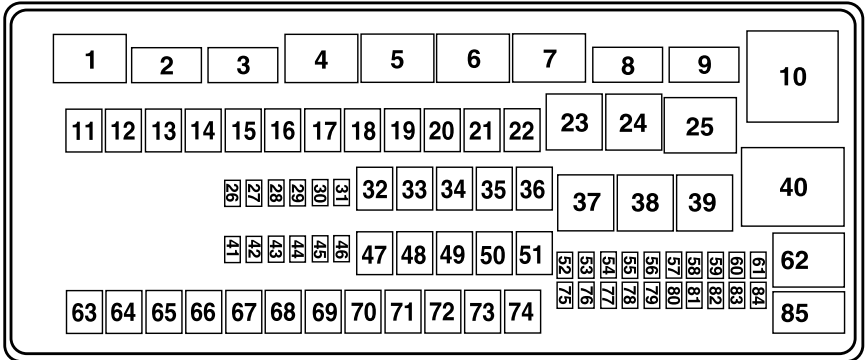


To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

**Note:** If your vehicle is equipped with dual batteries, disconnecting the primary under-hood battery does not remove power from all circuits.

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 145).



E194305

| Fuse or relay number | Fuse amp rating | Protected components             |
|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| 1                    | —               | Powertrain control module relay. |
| 2                    | —               | Starter solenoid relay.          |
| 3                    | —               | Wiper relay.                     |
| 4                    | —               | Trailer tow battery charge.      |
| 5                    | —               | Fuel pump relay.                 |
| 6                    | —               | Trailer tow park lamp relay.     |

## Fuses

| <b>Fuse or relay number</b> | <b>Fuse amp rating</b> | <b>Protected components</b>                            |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|--|
| 7                           | —                      | Auxiliary switch #4 relay.                             |
| 8                           | —                      | Auxiliary switch #3 relay.                             |
| 9                           | —                      | Modified vehicle and stripped chassis run/start relay. |
| 10                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 11                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 12                          | 40A**                  | Modified vehicle and stripped chassis run/start.       |
| 13                          | 30A**                  | Starter solenoid relay.                                |
| 14                          | 40A**                  | Run/start relay.                                       |
| 15                          | 40A**                  | Modified vehicle and stripped chassis battery.         |
| 16                          | 50A**                  | Auxiliary air conditioning blower.                     |
| 17                          | 50A**                  | Trailer tow battery charge.<br>Trailer tow park feed.  |
| 18                          | 30A**                  | Electric trailer brake.<br>Trailer brake controller.   |
| 19                          | 30A**                  | Auxiliary switch #1.                                   |
| 20                          | 30A**                  | Auxiliary switch #2.                                   |
| 21                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 22                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 23                          | —                      | Air conditioning clutch relay.                         |
| 24                          | —                      | Horn relay (stripped chassis).                         |
| 25                          | —                      | Run/start relay.                                       |
| 26                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 27                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 28                          | 20A*                   | Back-up lamp.  |
| 29                          | 10A*                   | Air conditioning clutch.                               |
| 30                          | 10A*                   | Brake on/off switch.                                   |

# Fuses

| Fuse or relay number | Fuse amp rating | Protected components  |
|----------------------|-----------------|---|
| 31                   | 10A*            | Cluster battery (stripped chassis).   |
| 32                   | 50A**           | Blower motor.   |
| 33                   | 40A**           | Anti-lock brake system pump.  |
| 34                   | 20A**           | Stripped chassis horn.  |
| 35                   | 40A**           | Powertrain control module relay.  |
| 36                   | 20A**           | Ignition switch (stripped chassis).   |
| 37                   | —               | Trailer tow left-hand side stop lamp and direction indicator lamp relay.  |
| 38                   | —               | Trailer tow right-hand side stop lamp and direction indicator lamp relay.   |
| 39                   | —               | Back-up lamp relay.   |
| 40                   | —               | Blower motor relay.   |
| 41                   | —               | Not used.   |
| 42                   | 15A*            | Diagnostic connector (stripped chassis).  |
| 43                   | 20A*            | Fuel pump.  |
| 44                   | 10A*            | Auxiliary switch #3.  |
| 45                   | 15A*            | Auxiliary switch #4.  |
| 46                   | 10A*            | Powertrain control module keep alive memory power.<br>Canister vent control valve.<br>Powertrain control module relay coil. |
| 47                   | 40A**           | Anti-lock brake system relay coil.  |
| 48                   | 20A**           | Trailer tow stop lamp and direction indicator lamps.  |
| 49                   | 30A**           | Wiper motor.  |
| 50                   | —               | Not used.   |
| 51                   | 20A**           | Cutaway.  |
| 52                   | 10A*            | Modified vehicle and stripped chassis run/start relay coil.   |
| 53                   | 10A*            | Anti-lock brake system run/start feed.  |

## Fuses

| <b>Fuse or relay number</b> | <b>Fuse amp rating</b> | <b>Protected components</b>  |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|--|
| 54                          | 10A*                   | Fuel pump relay coil.  |
| 55                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 56                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 57                          | 20A*                   | Trailer tow park lamp.   |
| 58                          | 15A*                   | Trailer tow back-up lamp.  |
| 59                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 60                          | —                      | One-touch integrated start diode.  |
| 61                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 62                          | —                      | Auxiliary switch #2 relay.   |
| 63                          | 30A**                  | Trailer tow battery charge.  |
| 64                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 65                          | 20A**                  | Power point 2 (glove box).   |
| 66                          | 20A**                  | Power point 3 (cutaway B+).  |
| 67                          | 20A**                  | Power point 1 (instrument panel).  |
| 68                          | 50A**                  | Modified vehicle.  |
| 69                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 70                          | 30A**                  | Stripped chassis.  |
| 71                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 72                          | 20A**                  | Cigarette lighter/power point.   |
| 73                          | —                      | Not used.  |
| 74                          | 30A**                  | Power seat.  |
| 75                          | 20A*                   | Vehicle power 1.<br>Powertrain control module power.                           |
| 76                          | 20A*                   | Vehicle power 2.<br>Powertrain control module emissions<br>related components. |
| 77                          | 10A*                   | Vehicle power 3.<br>Powertrain control module general<br>components.           |

# Fuses

| Fuse or relay number | Fuse amp rating | Protected components                                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|--|
| 78                   | 15A*            | Vehicle power 4.<br>Engine ignition coil relay coil. |
| 79                   | 10A*            | Vehicle power 5.<br>Transmission.                    |
| 80                   | 10A*            | Cluster run/start (stripped chassis).                |
| 81                   | —               | Not used.  |
| 82                   | —               | Not used.  |
| 83                   | —               | Fuel pump diode.                                     |
| 84                   | —               | Not used.  |
| 85                   | —               | Auxiliary switch #1 relay.                           |

\*Mini fuses.

\*\*A1S fuses.

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

### WARNING



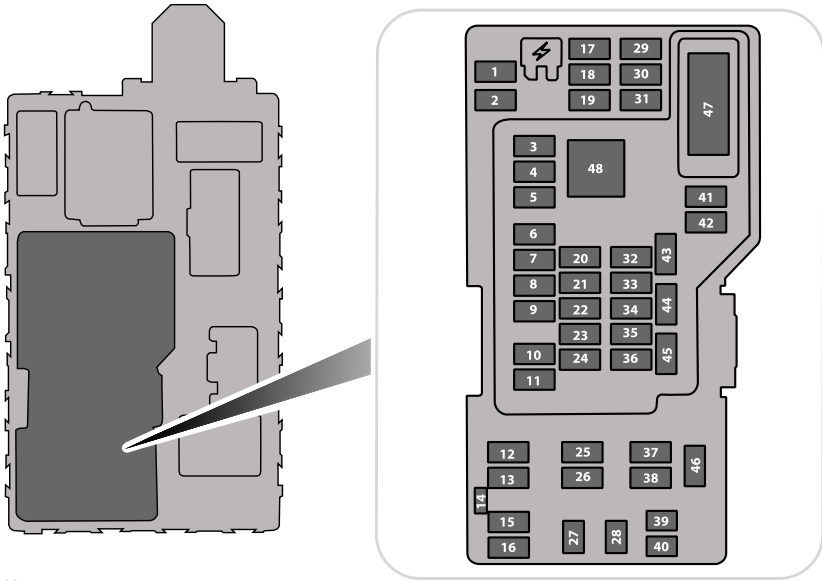
Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

**Note:** *If your vehicle is equipped with dual batteries, disconnecting the primary under-hood battery does not remove power from all circuits.*

The fuse panel is located to the left of the brake pedal and mounted onto the lower left cowl panel. Remove the fuse panel cover to access the fuses.

To remove a fuse, use the fuse puller tool provided on the inside of the fuse panel cover.

# Fuses



E194306

| Fuse or relay number | Fuse amp rating | Protected components  |
|----------------------|-----------------|---|
| 1                    | 30A             | Inverter B+.  |
| 2                    | 15A             | Not used (spare).   |
| 3                    | 15A             | Not used (spare).   |
| 4                    | 30A             | Not used (spare).   |
| 5                    | 10A             | Passenger compartment fuse panel.<br>Brake-shift interlock. |
| 6                    | 20A             | Direction indicators lamps.<br>Hazard lamps.<br>Stop lamps. |
| 7                    | 10A             | Left-side headlamp low beam.                                |
| 8                    | 10A             | Right-side headlamp low beam.                               |
| 9                    | 15A             | Courtesy lamps.   |

## Fuses

| <b>Fuse or relay number</b> | <b>Fuse amp rating</b> | <b>Protected components</b>                     |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|---|
| 10                          | 15A                    | Switch illumination.                            |
| 11                          | 10A                    | Not used (spare).                               |
| 12                          | 7.5A                   | Not used (spare).                               |
| 13                          | 5A                     | Mirrors.  |
| 14                          | 10A                    | SYNC.<br>Global positioning system module.      |
| 15                          | 10A                    | Not used (spare).                               |
| 16                          | 15A                    | Not used (spare).                               |
| 17                          | 20A                    | Door locks.                                     |
| 18                          | 20A                    | Not used (spare).                               |
| 19                          | 25A                    | Not used (spare).                               |
| 20                          | 15A                    | Diagnostic connector (except stripped chassis). |
| 21                          | 15A                    | Not used (spare).                               |
| 22                          | 15A                    | Parking lamps.<br>License plate lamps.          |
| 23                          | 15A                    | Headlamp high beams.                            |
| 24                          | 20A                    | Horn (except stripped chassis).                 |
| 25                          | 10A                    | Demand lighting.                                |
| 26                          | 10A                    | Cluster (except stripped chassis).              |
| 27                          | 20A                    | Ignition switch feed.                           |
| 28                          | 5A                     | Audio mute (start).                             |
| 29                          | 5A                     | Cluster (except stripped chassis).              |
| 30                          | 5A                     | Not used (spare).                               |
| 31                          | 10A                    | Not used (spare).                               |
| 32                          | 10A                    | Restraints module.                              |
| 33                          | 10A                    | Trailer brake controller.                       |
| 34                          | 5A                     | Not used (spare).                               |



# Fuses

| Fuse or relay number | Fuse amp rating | Protected components   |
|----------------------|-----------------|--|
| 35                   | 10A             | Cutaway run/start.   |
| 36                   | 5A              | Passive anti-theft system radio frequency module.  |
| 37                   | 10A             | Climate control.<br>Stripped chassis #1 run/start.                                       |
| 38                   | 20A             | Not used (spare).  |
| 39                   | 20A             | Radio.   |
| 40                   | 20A             | Not used (spare).  |
| 41                   | 15A             | Radio.<br>Switch illumination.<br>Automatic dimming rear view mirror.<br>Power inverter. |
| 42                   | 10A             | Auxiliary switch.  |
| 43                   | 10A             | Stripped chassis instrument panel connector #1.  |
| 44                   | 10A             | Trailer tow battery charge relay.  |
| 45                   | 5A              | Wipers.<br>Stripped chassis engine connector 3.  |
| 46                   | 7.5A            | Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.   |
| 47                   | 30A             | Windows accessory delay circuit breaker.   |
| 48                   | —               | Delayed accessory relay.   |

## CHANGING A FUSE

### Fuses

#### WARNING



Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



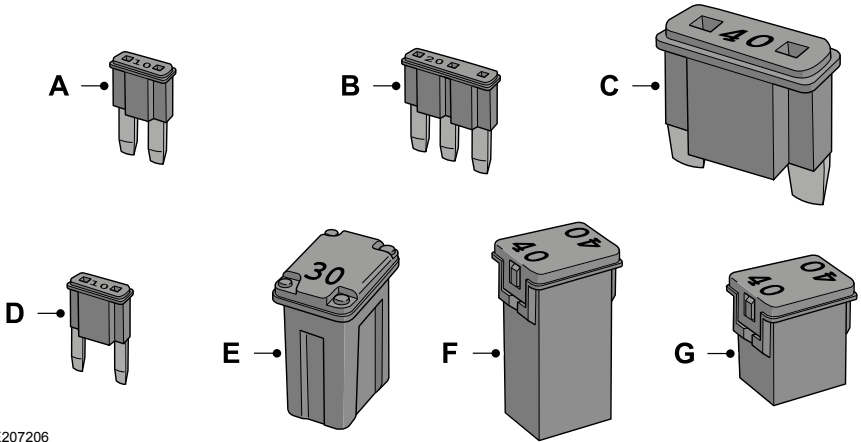
E217331

# Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within

the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

## FuseTypes



E207206

| Callout | Fuse Type          |
|---------|--------------------|
| A       | Micro 2            |
| B       | Micro 3            |
| C       | Maxi               |
| D       | Mini               |
| E       | M Case             |
| F       | J Case             |
| G       | J Case Low Profile |

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

## Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

## Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).

2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

## Working with the Engine On

### WARNING



To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Block the wheels.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

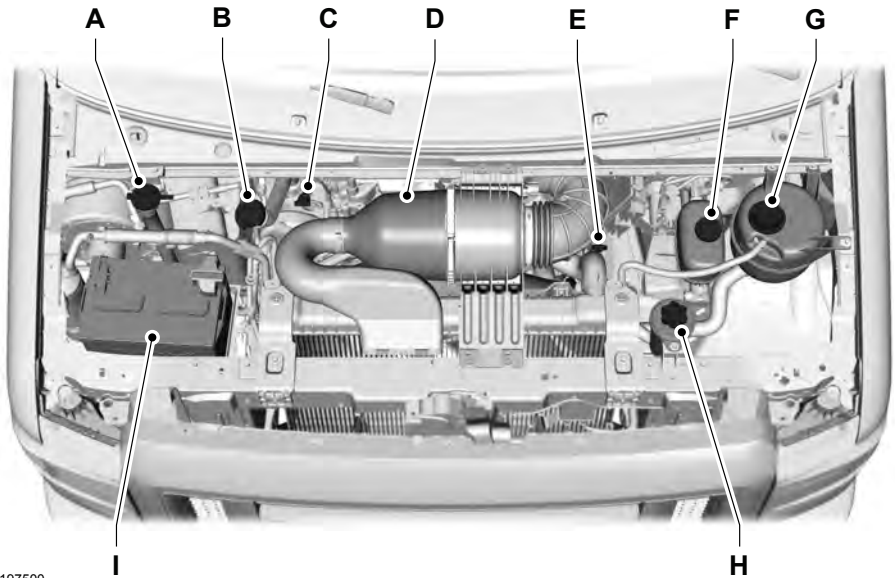


E196351

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the bottom left corner of the instrument panel.
2. Go to the front of the vehicle and push the auxiliary latch, located in the center of the top grille, to the left in order to release the hood.
3. Lift the hood and secure it with the prop rod.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW



E197500

- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 145).
- B Engine oil filler cap: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 138).
- C Automatic transmission fluid dipstick: See **Automatic Transmission Fluid Check** (page 142).
- D Air filter assembly: See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 155).
- E Engine oil dipstick: See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 138).
- F Brake fluid reservoir: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 144).
- G Engine coolant reservoir: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 139).
- H Power steering fluid reservoir: See **Power Steering Fluid Check** (page 145).
- I Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 145).

# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK



E161560

- A MIN
- B MAX

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

**Note:** Check the level before starting the engine.

**Note:** Make sure that the level is between the MIN and the MAX marks.

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the level is at the MIN mark, add oil immediately.

## Adding Engine Oil

**Note:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the MAX mark. Oil levels above the MAX mark may cause engine damage.



E142732

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add engine oil that meets the Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 191).
3. Wipe off any spilled oil.
4. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

## OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET

### Resetting the Oil Life Monitoring System

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

# Maintenance

To reset the oil life monitoring system do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the engine.
2. Fully press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time.
3. Keep the accelerator and brake pedals fully pressed.
4. After three seconds, a message displays confirming the reset procedure is in progress.
5. After 25 seconds, a message displays confirming the reset procedure is complete.
6. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.
7. Switch the ignition off.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

### WARNINGS



Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, spilling coolant on hot engine parts can burn you.



Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.



Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

## Checking the Engine Coolant

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the engine coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 268).

**Note:** Make sure that the coolant level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.

**Note:** If the level is at the MIN mark, below the MIN mark, or empty, add coolant immediately. See **Adding Engine Coolant** in this chapter.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30°F (-34°C) and -34°F (-37°C).

**Note:** For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer such as Robinair® Coolant and Battery Refractometer 75240. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentrations.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Do not use engine coolant, antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

## Adding Engine Coolant

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants or additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

# Maintenance

---

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants may harm your engine's cooling system. The use of an improper coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty. Use prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 191).

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, qualified personnel:

1. Must drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the coolant system with Motorcraft Premium Cooling System Flush.
3. Refill with engine coolant as soon as possible.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any engine coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze or coolant.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

When adding coolant:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 191).

3. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle.
4. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the proper level.

## Recycled Engine Coolant

Ford Motor Company does not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

## Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to have an authorized dealer increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Engine coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- It may be necessary to have an authorized dealer decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheat protection. Engine coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

# Maintenance

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted engine coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

## What You Should Know About Fail-Safe Cooling

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

### How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the engine coolant temperature gauge moves to the red (hot) area and:



A high engine temperature message appears in the information display.



The service engine soon indicator appears in the information display.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

If this occurs, your vehicle still operates. However:

- The engine power becomes limited.
- The air conditioning system becomes disabled.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature and the engine completely shuts down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

## When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

### WARNINGS



Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle has limited power, does not maintain high-speed operation and may completely shut down without warning. Potentially losing power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Your vehicle has limited engine power, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine operates poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch off the engine.
2. Tow your vehicle to an authorized dealer.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and add if low.
5. Re-start the engine and drive your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage. See an authorized dealer as soon as possible.*



# Maintenance

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid and filter at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 268).

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

### Checking Automatic Transmission Fluid

For scheduled intervals of the fluid checks and changes, See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 268). Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is at normal operating temperature (approximately 19 mi (30 km)). Verify that the transmission fluid temperature gauge, located on the instrument cluster, is within normal range.

1. Drive the vehicle 19 mi (30 km) until it reaches normal operating temperature.
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.
3. With the engine running, parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow sufficient time for each gear to engage.
4. Put the transmission in park (P) and leave the engine running.

5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry lint free rag. If necessary, refer to the Under Hood Overview in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.
6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube.
7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the designated area for normal operating temperature or ambient temperature.

### Low Fluid Level

Type A



E163739

Type B



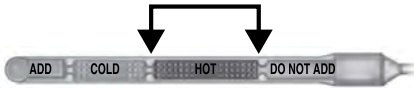
E163740

Do not drive the vehicle if there is no indication of fluid on the dipstick and the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C).

# Maintenance

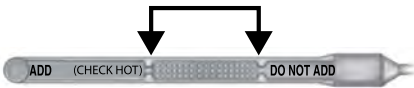
## Correct Fluid Level

Type A



E163741

Type B

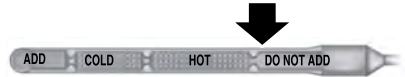


E163742

For vehicles equipped with 5-speed transmissions, check the fluid at the normal operating temperature of 151°F (66°C) to 170°F (77°C) on a level surface. For vehicles equipped with 6-speed transmissions, check the fluid at the normal operating temperature of 196°F (91°C) to 215°F (102°C) on a level surface. The normal operating temperature can be reached after approximately 19 mi (30 km).

## High Fluid Level

Type A



E163743

Type B



E163744

Fluid levels above the safe range may result in transmission failure. An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and engagement concerns, and possible damage.

High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition.

## Adjusting Automatic Transmission Fluid Levels

**Note:** Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transmission component damage.

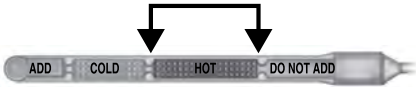
Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on:

# Maintenance

- the dipstick handle.
- See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 191).

If necessary, add fluid in 8 fl oz (250 ml) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.

Type A



E163745

Type B



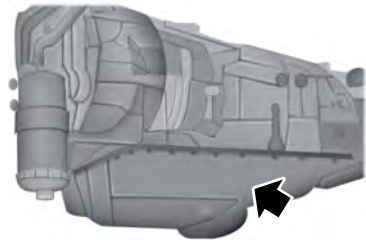
E163746

If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by a qualified technician.

**Note:** *An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and engagement concerns, and possible damage.*

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

## Automatic Transmission Fluid Filter



E196355

Your automatic transmission is equipped with a serviceable transmission fluid filter located inside the transmission bottom pan. For service intervals for the automatic transmission fluid and transmission filter, See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 268).

For transmission filter maintenance, see your authorized dealer.

## BRAKE FLUID CHECK

Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

# Maintenance

## POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK

### WARNINGS



A fluid level between the MAX and MIN lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system.



For E-350 and E-450 vehicles with the Hydro-Boost Brake System, do not press the brake pedal after the engine has been turned off. Pressing the brake pedal after the engine has been turned off will give a false power steering fluid level reading.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 197).

To top up the power steering fluid level do the following.

1. Start the engine and let it run until it reaches normal operating temperature.
2. Make sure the fluid is within the **MIN** and **MAX** range.
3. If the fluid level is low, add fluid to be within the **MIN** and **MAX** range. Do not overfill.
4. While the engine idles, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.
5. Recheck the fluid level in the reservoir.

**Note:** Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level.

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

### WARNING



If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 191).

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

## FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

### WARNINGS



This vehicle may be fitted with more than one battery, removal of cable from only one battery does not disconnect the vehicle electrical system. Be sure to disconnect cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

# Maintenance

## WARNINGS



Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.



When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

**Note:** *If your vehicle battery has a cover, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.*

**Note:** *Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.*

Your vehicle is fitted with a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.

## Reconnecting the Battery

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. Flexible fuel vehicles (FFV) must also relearn the ethanol content of the fuel for optimum driveability and performance.

To begin this process.

1. Switch off all accessories and start the engine.
2. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
3. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
4. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
5. Fully press the foot brake. Release the parking brake. Shift the gearshift lever to Drive (D) and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
6. Drive the vehicle for approximately 10 mi (16 km) to complete the relearning process.

# Maintenance

**Note:** *If you do not carry out the above process, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.*

Flexible fuel vehicles operating on E85 may experience poor starts and driveability problems until the fuel trim and ethanol content have been relearned.

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, the transmission must learn its adaptive strategy. As a result of this, the transmission may shift firmly. This operation is considered normal and fully updates transmission operation to its optimum shift feel. We recommend that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time. This minimizes the discharge of your battery during storage.

## Dual Batteries (If Equipped)

Your vehicle may be fitted with a frame-mounted battery located on the passenger side frame rail, behind the front passenger door. This battery is connected in parallel with the battery in the engine compartment. Both batteries are used to start the vehicle.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

You can manually move the wiper arms when the ignition is off. This allows for ease of blade replacement and cleaning under the blades.



E165804

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



E165794

2. Release the wiper blade lock (A) and separate the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
3. Install in the reverse order.

# Maintenance

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back on the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when you turn the ignition on.

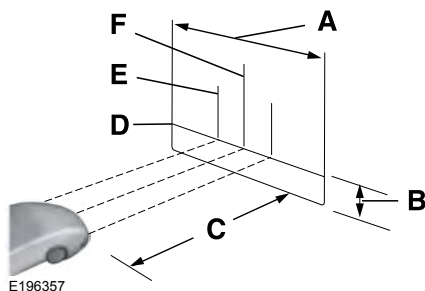
- Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.
- You can improve poor wiper quality by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

We properly aim the headlamps on your vehicle at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, have an authorized dealer check the alignment of your headlamps.

### Vertical and Horizontal Aim Adjustment (Sealed Beam Headlamps)

Use the mechanical aimers on your vehicle to aim the headlamps. If mechanical aimers are used and the cross-car sight line is in any way blocked, set the legs of the universal adaptor all to the same setting, such that the cross-car sight line is no longer blocked (per the instructions for the brand of mechanical aimer you are using). You can also aim the headlamps visually using the procedure below.



- A 8 feet (2.4 meters).
- B Center height of lamp to ground.
- C 25 feet (7.6 meters).
- D Horizontal reference line.
- E Vertical reference line for the center of the headlamp.
- F Vertical reference line for the center of the vehicle.

To adjust the headlamps:

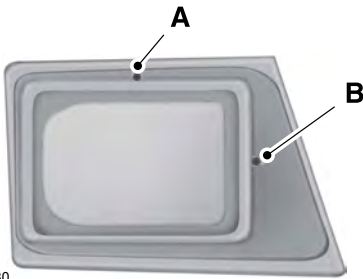
1. Park your vehicle on a level surface about 25 feet (7.6 meters) away from a vertical plain surface. Check your headlamp alignment at night or in a dark area so that you can see the headlamp beam pattern.
2. The center of the headlamp is marked either on the lens (a circle or cross marker) or on the bulb shield, internal to the lamp (mark or feature). Measure the height from the center of your headlamp to the ground (B) and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) long horizontal line on the wall or screen (D) at this height (masking tape works well).
3. Turn on the low beam headlamps and open the hood.

# Maintenance



E167358

4. Locate the high intensity area of the beam pattern and place the top edge of the intensity zone even with the horizontal reference line (D). If the top edge of the high intensity area is not even with the horizontal line, follow the next step to adjust it.



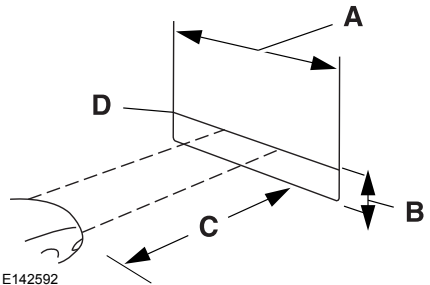
E196380

5. Locate the vertical adjuster (A) for each headlamp. Turn the adjuster control either clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp.
6. In addition to the horizontal line marked in step 2, a pair of vertical lines (E) must be marked at the center line of the headlamps on the wall or screen.

7. On the wall or screen, locate the high intensity area of the beam pattern. The left edge of the high intensity area should be even with the vertical line corresponding to the headlamp under adjustment. If the left edge of the high intensity area is not even with the vertical line, follow the next step to adjust it.
8. Locate the horizontal adjuster (B) for each headlamp. Turn it clockwise or counterclockwise to place the left edge of the high intensity area even with the vertical line corresponding to the headlamp under adjustment.

## Vertical Aim Adjustment Procedure (Aerodynamic Headlamps)

You can only adjust the headlamps vertically. Your vehicle does not require horizontal aim adjustments.



E142592

- A 8 feet (2.4 meters).
- B Center height of lamp to ground.
- C 25 feet (7.6 meters).
- D Horizontal reference line.

To adjust the headlamps:

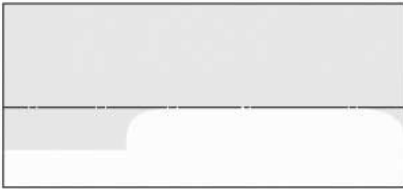


# Maintenance

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.



E142465

4. On the wall or screen, you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, you will need to adjust the headlamp.



E163806

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp.
6. Repeat steps 3 thru 5 to adjust the other headlamp.
7. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.

## REMOVING A HEADLAMP

### Aerodynamic Headlamps

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.



E196385

2. Remove the three screws from the headlamp assembly and pull the assembly straight out.

# Maintenance

3. Disconnect the electrical connector by squeezing the release tab and pushing the connector forward, then pulling it rearward.
4. Remove the headlamp.

To install the new lamp, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

## Sealed Beam Headlamps

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.



E196387

2. Remove the four screws from the headlamp assembly and carefully remove the lamp/bezel.
3. Remove the four screws and the retaining ring.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector from the lamp and remove the lamp.

To install the new lamp, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

## CHANGING A BULB

### Lamp Assembly Condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur

when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets).
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp.
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens.

Take your vehicle to a dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

## Replacing Headlamp Bulbs (Aerodynamic)

### WARNING



Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

**Note:** If the bulb is accidentally touched, clean it with rubbing alcohol before use.

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.
2. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 150).
3. Disconnect the electrical connector by squeezing the release tab and pushing the connector forward, then pulling it rearward.

# Maintenance



E196386

4. Remove the bulb assembly by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.

To install the new bulb, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

## Replacing Front Parking Lamp and Direction Indicator Bulbs

### Aerodynamic



E196388

### Sealed beam



E196389

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.
2. Remove the headlamp assembly. Refer to **Replacing Headlamp Bulbs** in this section.
3. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.
4. Carefully pry up the bulb straight out of the socket.

To complete installation, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

## Replacing Side Marker Bulbs

### Aerodynamic



E196390

# Maintenance

## Sealed beam



E196391

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.
2. Remove the headlamp assembly. Refer to **Replacing Headlamp Bulbs** in this section.
3. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.
4. Carefully pry up the bulb straight out of the socket.

To complete installation, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

## Replacing Brake/Tail/Turn/Reverse Lamp Bulbs (Cut-Away Only)

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.

## Exterior Lamps

| Lamp   | Trade name |
|--|------------|
| Front side marker lamp - vehicles with aerodynamic lamps.    | W5W        |
| Front side marker lamp - vehicles with sealed beam lamps.    | 194        |
| Park lamp - vehicles with aerodynamic lamps.                 | 3157AK     |
| Park lamp - vehicles with sealed beam lamps.                 | 3157K      |
| Front direction indicator - vehicles with aerodynamic lamps. | 3157AK     |
| Front direction indicator - vehicles with sealed beam lamps. | 3157K      |



E163828

2. Remove the four screws and the lamp lens from the lamp assembly.
3. Carefully pull the bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb.

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized "D.O.T." for North America and an "E" for Europe to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb illumination time.

# Maintenance

---

| <b>Lamp</b>   | <b>Trade name</b> |
|---|-------------------|
| Headlamp low beam - vehicles with aerodynamic lamps.  | H13               |
| Headlamp high beam - vehicles with aerodynamic lamps. | H13               |
| Headlamps - vehicles with sealed beam lamps.          | H6054             |
| Front clearance lamp (exterior mirror).               | 2825              |
| Brake, rear and direction indicator lamp.             | 3157K             |
| Reversing lamps.                                      | 3156              |

## Interior Lamps

| <b>Lamp</b>     | <b>Trade name</b> |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| Underhood Lamp. | 906               |
| Map lamp.       | 578               |
| Dome lamp.      | 578               |
| Cargo lamp.     | 578               |

To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

### WARNING

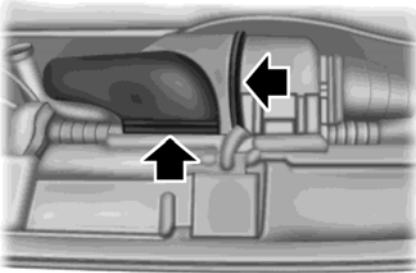


To reduce the risk of vehicle damage or personal injury, do not start the engine with the air filter removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

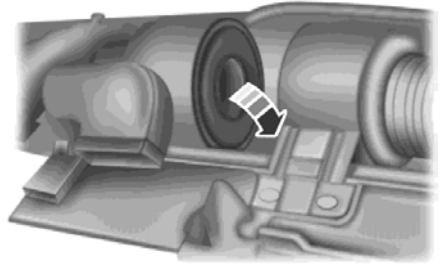
When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See **Motorcraft Parts** (page 192). The air filter element should be replaced at the appropriate intervals. See **Normal Scheduled Maintenance** (page 271).

**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.



E197063

1. Disconnect the fresh air inlet tube from the radiator support.
2. Open the clamp that secures the two halves of the air filter housing together.



E197064

3. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.
4. Remove the air filter element from the housing.
5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.
6. Replace the two halves of the air filter housing and secure the clamp.
7. Connect the fresh air inlet tube to the radiator support.

# Vehicle Care

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Your Ford or Lincoln authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

### Materials

| Name  | Specification |
|---|---------------|
| Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover<br>ZC-42   | -             |
| Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner<br>ZC-15   | -             |
| Motorcraft® Detail Wash<br>ZC-3-A   | ESR-M14P4-A   |
| Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S.)<br>ZC-20 (U.S.)                              | -             |
| Engine Shampoo  | -             |
| Motorcraft Leather and Vinyl Cleaner<br>ZC-56   | -             |
| Multi-Purpose Cleaner   | -             |
| Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with<br>Bitterant (U.S.)<br>ZC-32-B2 (U.S.) | WSS-M14P19-A  |
| Professional Strength Carpet and Upholstery Cleaner<br>ZC-54                                | -             |
| Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (U.S.)<br>ZC-14 (U.S.)                                    | -             |
| Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (U.S.)<br>ZC-23 (U.S.)                          | ESR-M14P5-A   |
| Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner<br>ZC-37-A   | -             |

## CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.

# Vehicle Care

---

- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. We recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 2,000 psi (14,000 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 179°F (82°C).
- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 12 in (305 mm) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

**Note:** *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

## Exterior Chrome Parts

- Apply a high quality-cleaning product to bumpers and other chrome parts. Follow the manufacturer's instructions. We recommend Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner.
- Do not apply the cleaning product to hot surfaces. Do not leave the cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than the time recommended.
- Using other non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

**Note:** *Never use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.*

**Note:** *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

## Exterior Plastic Parts

For routine cleaning we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash. If tar or grease spots are present, we recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

## Stripes or Graphics (If Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

**Note:** *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

## Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free of debris or foreign material.

## WAXING

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax.
- Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles.



# Vehicle Care

---

- Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time.
  - Roof racks.
  - Bumpers.
  - Grained door handles.
  - Side moldings.
  - Mirror housings.
  - Windshield cowl area.
- Do not apply wax to glass areas.
- After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.

## CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.

- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

## CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner. When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

**Note:** *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### WARNINGS



Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

## CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS

### WARNING



Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

**Note:** Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces. See **Cleaning Leather Seats** (page 160).

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Do not use any household cleaning products or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

If a staining liquid like coffee or juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces:

# Vehicle Care

---

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, soft cloth as quickly as possible.
2. Use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.
3. Alternatively, wipe the surface with a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
4. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, soft cloth and press it onto the soiled area. Allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
5. Remove the soaked cloth, then with a clean, damp cloth, use a rubbing motion for 60 seconds on the soiled area.
6. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (If Equipped)

**Note:** Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

**Note:** Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.

You should:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Always read the instructions before using cleaning products.

## CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

**Note:** Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

# Vehicle Care

---

**Note:** *Industrial-strength or heavy-duty cleaners in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.*

**Note:** *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergents.*

**Note:** *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean the wheels weekly using Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner. Apply using manufacturer's instructions.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

## VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all motor vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve engine components.

## General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

## Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

## Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.

# Vehicle Care

---

- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.
- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.

## Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

## Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

## Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, we recommend that you disconnect the battery cables to maintain battery charge for quick starting.

**Note:** *It is necessary to reset memory features if battery cables are disconnected.*

## Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

## Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

## Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

## Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

# Wheels and Tires

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Notice to Utility Vehicle, Van and Truck Owners

#### WARNINGS



Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers, drive at safe speeds for the conditions, keep tires properly inflated, never overload or improperly load your vehicle, and make sure every passenger is properly restrained.



In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts. Children and infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

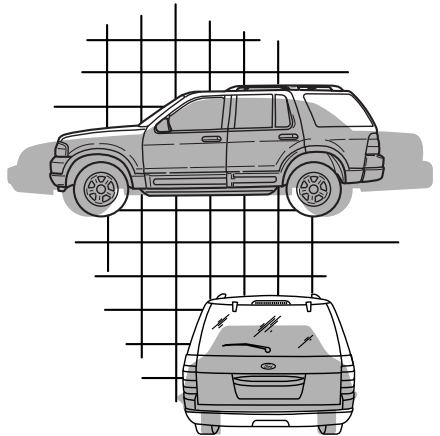


E145298

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

### How Your Vehicle Differs from Other Vehicles

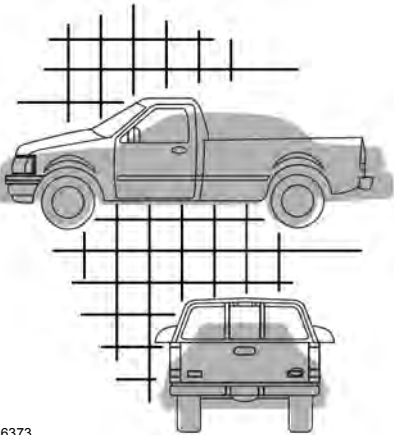
Sport-utility vehicles, vans and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:



E145299

# Wheels and Tires

- Higher - to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter - to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.
- Narrower - to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.



E166373

As a result of the above dimensional differences, sport-utility vehicles, vans and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition.

These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

## TIRE CARE

### Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading



E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

# Wheels and Tires

---

**U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

## Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Traction AA A B C

### WARNING



The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics

---

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## Temperature A B C

### WARNING



The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

---

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the



# Wheels and Tires

---

Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

## Glossary of Tire Terminology

\***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

\***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

\***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

\***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) or 36 psi (2.5 bar) depending on tire size and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

\***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

\***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 kilometers).

\***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

**B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

\***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

\* **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

\***Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

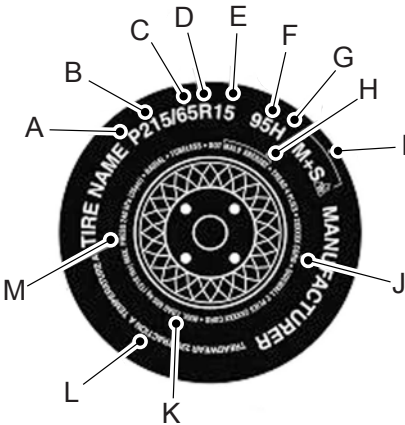
\***Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

# Wheels and Tires

## Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

## Information on P Type Tires



E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

**A. P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

**B. 215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

**C. 65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

**D. R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

**E. 15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

**F. 95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

# Wheels and Tires

**G. H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

**Note:** *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

| Letter rating | mph ( km/h) |
|---------------|-------------|
| M             | 81 (130)    |
| N             | 87 (140)    |
| Q             | 99 (159)    |
| R             | 106 (171)   |
| S             | 112 (180)   |
| T             | 118 (190)   |
| U             | 124 (200)   |
| H             | 130 (210)   |
| V             | 149 (240)   |

| Letter rating | mph ( km/h) |
|---------------|-------------|
| W             | 168 (270)   |
| Y             | 186 (299)   |

**Note:** *For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.*

## H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification

**Number:** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**I. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

# Wheels and Tires

---

## J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:

Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**K. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

## L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:

**\*Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

**\*Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**\*Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

## M. Maximum Inflation

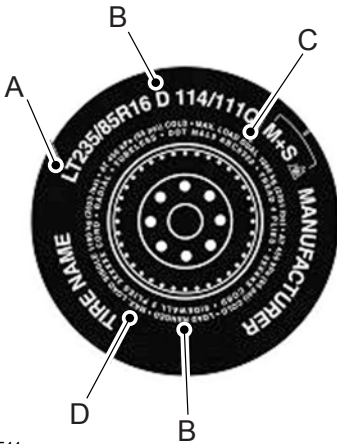
**Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

## Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

**Note:** *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

# Wheels and Tires



E142544

LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires. These differences are described below.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

## Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142545

# Wheels and Tires

---

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires. These differences are described below:

**A. T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

**B. 145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

**C. 80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

**D. D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

**R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

**E. 16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

## Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

## Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns

# Wheels and Tires

---

## WARNING



Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles

**Note:** *Do not reduce tire pressure to change the ride characteristics of the vehicle. If you do not maintain the inflation pressure at the levels specified by Ford, your vehicle may experience a condition known as shimmy. Shimmy is a severe vibration and oscillation in the steering wheel after the vehicle travels over a bump or dip in the road that does not dampen out by itself. Shimmy may result from significant under-inflation of the tires, improper tires (load range, size, or type), or vehicle modifications such as lift-kits. In the event that your vehicle experiences shimmy, you should slowly reduce speed by either lifting off the accelerator pedal or lightly applying the brakes. The shimmy will cease as the vehicle speed decreases.*

**Maximum Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on

## Wheels and Tires

---

the B-pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

**Note:** *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (for example, driven more than 1 mile [1.6 kilometers]), never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

**Note:** *If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.*

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** *If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.*

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

**Note:** *Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T type mini-spare tires, (see the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires, see the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.*



# Wheels and Tires

---

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

## Tire Inflation Information

### WARNING



An inflated tire and rim can be very dangerous if improperly used, serviced or maintained. To reduce the risk of serious injury, never attempt to re-inflate a tire which has been run flat or seriously under-inflated without first removing the tire from the wheel assembly for inspection. Do not attempt to add air to tires or replace tires or wheels without first taking precautions to protect persons and property.

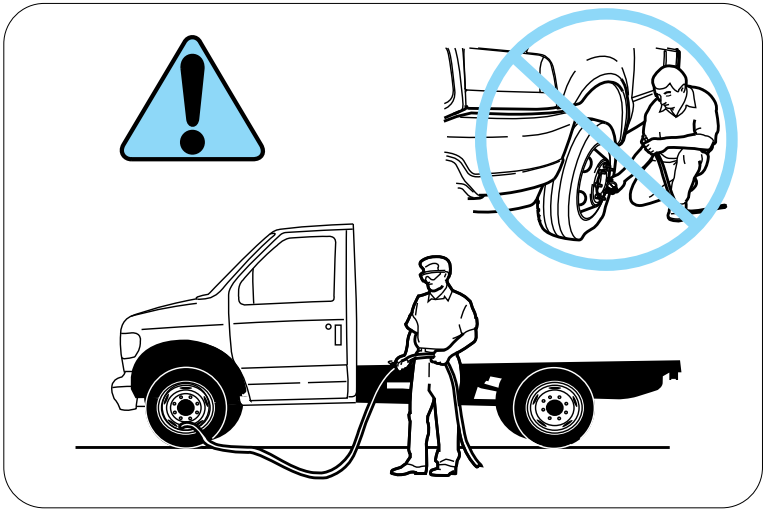
---

All tires with Steel Carcass Plies (if equipped):

This type of tire utilizes steel cords in the sidewalls. As such, they cannot be treated like normal light truck tires. Tire service, including adjusting tire pressure, must be performed by personnel trained, supervised and equipped according to Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration regulations. For example, during any procedure involving tire inflation, the technician or individual must utilize a remote inflation device, and ensure that all persons are clear of the trajectory area.

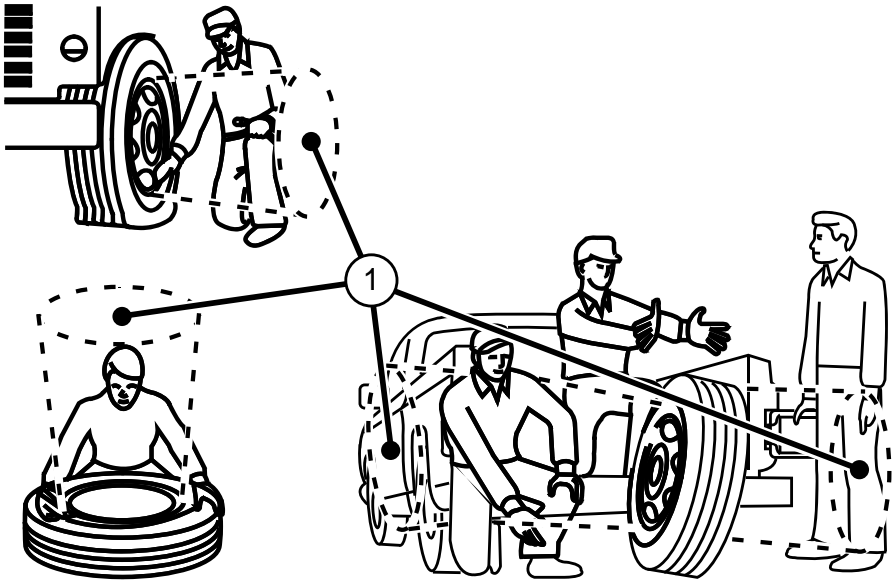
# Wheels and Tires

---



E161437

# Wheels and Tires



E161438

## WARNING



Stay out of the trajectory (1) as indicated in the illustration.

## Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

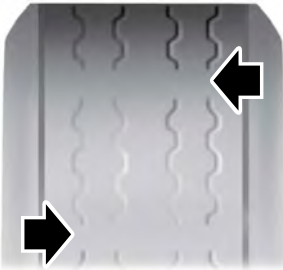
Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other

signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

# Wheels and Tires

## Tire Wear



E142546

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 millimeters), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 millimeters).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

## Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed

or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

## Age

### WARNING



Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

## U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and

# Wheels and Tires

describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

## Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

### WARNINGS



Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size

### WARNINGS

may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label or the Tire Label. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again

# Wheels and Tires

---

## WARNINGS

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.6 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.6 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly

---

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle

The two front tires or two rear tires should generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, the system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

## Replacing a Tire That is Greenhouse Gas Certified

The tires installed on this vehicle at the factory as original equipment are certified for Greenhouse Gas and Fuel Efficiency regulations. Replacement tires must be of equal or lower rolling resistance level (TRRL or Crr). Consult with your tire supplier(s) for appropriate replacement tires.

# Wheels and Tires

## Safety Practices

### WARNINGS



If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

## Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- \*Observe posted speed limits
- \*Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- \*Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- \*Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

## Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

## Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.


Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

# Wheels and Tires

## Tire Rotation

### WARNING

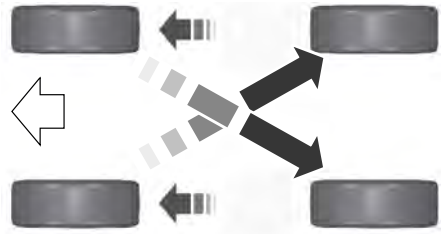
 If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, then the settings for the system sensors need to be updated. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If the system is not reset, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

**Note:** *If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

**Note:** *Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

**Note:** *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life. Sometime irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

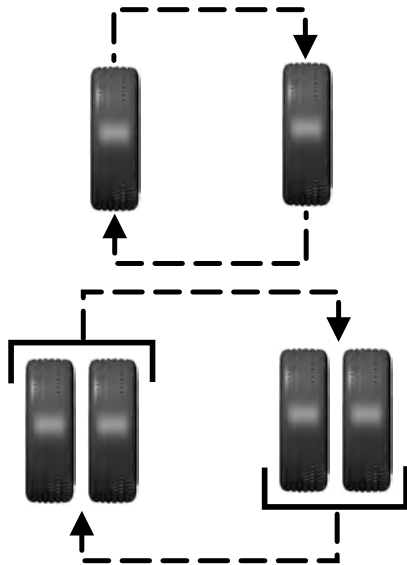


E142548

Rear-wheel drive vehicles and four-wheel drive vehicles (front tires at left of diagram).



# Wheels and Tires



E166988

Dual rear wheel drive vehicle - six tire rotation (front tires at top of diagram).

If your vehicle is equipped with dual rear wheels it is recommended that the front and rear tires (in pairs) be rotated only side to side. We do not recommend splitting up the dual rear wheels. Rotate them side to side as a set. After tire rotation, inflation pressures must be adjusted for the tires new positions in accordance with vehicle requirements.

## USING SNOW CHAINS

### WARNING



Snow tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury, and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case, or power transfer unit failure. It is also strongly advised to follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and cables. If you need to use cables, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as cables may chip aluminum wheels.

**Note:** *The suspension insulation and bumpers help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.*

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Use only SAE Class S chains.

# Wheels and Tires

- Install chains securely, verifying that the chains do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the chains rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and retighten the chains. If this does not work, remove the chains to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

### WARNING



The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see Inflating your tires in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

# Wheels and Tires

The tire pressure monitoring system complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

**Note:** Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See *Inflating Your Tires* in this chapter.

## Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

## When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

## When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

# Wheels and Tires

| Low tire pressure warning light | Possible cause         | Customer action required   |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|--|
| Solid warning light             | Tire(s) under-inflated | Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See <a href="#">Inflating your tires</a> in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off. |
|                                 | Spare tire in use      | Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see <b>When your temporary spare tire is installed</b> in this section.   |
|                                 | TPMS malfunction       | If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.  |
| Flashing warning light          | Spare tire in use      | Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see <b>When your temporary spare tire is installed</b> in this section.   |
|                                 | TPMS malfunction       | If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.  |

## When Inflating Your Tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure

# Wheels and Tires

## How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

### WARNINGS



The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, the Ford Tire Mobility Kit sealant should be used. The tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized dealer after use of the sealant.



If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 183).

### WARNINGS



To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle, see the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See **Load Carrying** (page 93).



Never use wheels or lug nuts different than the original equipment as this could damage the wheel or mounting system. This damage could allow the wheels to come off while the vehicle is being driven.

**Note:** *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 183). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

# Wheels and Tires

## Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

### WARNING



Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spares:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.

- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

### 3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

# Wheels and Tires






When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

## Tire Change Procedure

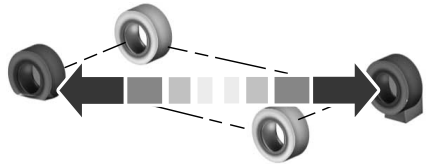
### WARNINGS

-  When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent your vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).
-  To help prevent your vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure to place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N), set the parking brake, and block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of your vehicle) to the tire being changed.
-  Never get underneath a vehicle that is supported only by a jack. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.
-  Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.
-  Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided as original equipment with your vehicle, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications.

**Note:** *Passengers should not remain in your vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

### Removing the flat wheel and tire

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off.

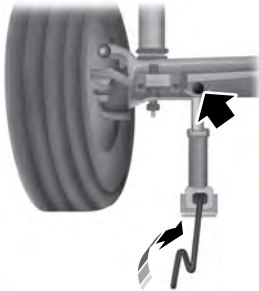


E142551

3. Block both directions of the wheel that is diagonally opposite to the wheel that is being lifted.
4. Remove the spare tire and jack from the storage location.
5. Remove the wheel trim (if equipped) by inserting the tapered end of the lug nut wrench behind the wheel cover or hubcap and twist it off.
6. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

# Wheels and Tires

## Jacking location



E201348

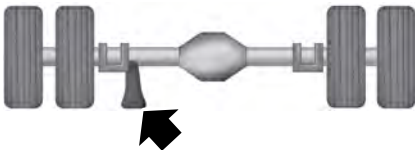
Front axle jacking point: Place the jack under the pin on the front surface of the front axle.

**Note:** Do not place the jack under or on the steering linkage.



E201346

Rear axle jacking points: All models except E-350 and E-450 dual rear wheel.



E201347

Rear axle jacking points: E-350 and E-450 dual rear wheel.

## Installing the spare wheel and tire

1. Refer to the diagrams above to locate the correct jacking point for your vehicle.
2. Raise the vehicle by using the jack handle to turn the jack nut clockwise. Once the flat tire is raised above the ground, remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.
3. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
4. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle clockwise.



E161441

5. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 190).
6. Install any wheel covers or hubcaps. Make sure they snap into place.
7. Stow the jack and lug wrench.
8. Unblock the wheels.



# Wheels and Tires

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

#### WARNING



When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

| Bolt size                   | lb.ft (Nm)         |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| 9/16 x 18 conical lug nut   | 148 lb.ft (200 Nm) |
| 9/16 x 18 two-piece lug nut | 140 lb.ft (190 Nm) |

On vehicles equipped with single rear wheels, retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).

On vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels, retighten the wheel lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 kilometers), and again at 500 miles (800 kilometers) of new vehicle operation and after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).



E161443

On all two-piece flat wheel nuts, apply one drop of motor oil between the flat washer and the nut. Do not apply motor oil to the wheel nut threads or the wheel stud threads.



E145950

A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot hole and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

# Capacities and Specifications

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 5.4L V8

| Engine            | 5.4L V8                            |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| Cubic inches      | 330                                |
| Required fuel     | Minimum 87 octane or E85           |
| Firing order      | 1-3-7-2-6-5-4-8                    |
| Ignition system   | Coil on plug                       |
| Spark plug gap    | 0.051 – 0.057 in. (1.29 – 1.45 mm) |
| Compression ratio | 9.0:1                              |

### Drivebelt Routing

#### 5.4L V8 Engine with A/C



E161788

#### 5.4L V8 Engine without A/C



E161789

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 6.8L

| Engine          | 6.8L V10                           |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| Cubic inches    | 415                                |
| Required fuel   | Minimum 87                         |
| Firing order    | 1-6-5-10-2-7-3-8-4-9               |
| Ignition system | Coil on plug                       |
| Spark plug gap  | 0.052 – 0.056 in. (1.32 – 1.42 mm) |
|                 | 0.051 – 0.057 in. (1.29 – 1.45 mm) |

# Capacities and Specifications

| Engine            | 6.8L V10                |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
|                   | (With CNG Prep Package) |
| Compression ratio | 9.0:1                   |

## Drivebelt Routing

### 6.8L V10 Engine with A/C



E161788

### 6.8L V10 Engine without A/C



E161789

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 5.4L V8

| Component           | Part Number              |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| Air filter element  | FA-1632                  |
| Oil filter          | FL-820-S                 |
| Battery             | BXT-65-650<br>BXT-65-750 |
| Battery (auxiliary) | BXT-65-750               |
| Spark plugs         | SP-521                   |

## Capacities and Specifications

---

| Component   | Part Number |
|---|-------------|
| Torqshift automatic transmission internal bottom-pan filter | FT-180      |
| Windshield wiper blade                                      | WW-2005     |

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at [fordparts.com](http://fordparts.com) for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 268).

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 6.8L

| Component  | Part Number              |
|--|--------------------------|
| Air filter element   | FA-1632                  |
| Oil filter   | FL-820-S                 |
| Battery  | BXT-65-650<br>BXT-65-750 |
| Battery (auxiliary)  | BXT-65-750               |
| Spark plugs  | SP-521                   |
| Torqshift automatic transmission<br>internal bottom-pan filter | FT-180                   |
| Windshield wiper blade   | WW-2005                  |

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at [fordparts.com](http://fordparts.com) for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 268).

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

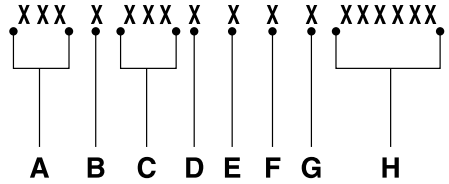
The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E142476

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

The Vehicle Identification Number contains the following information:



E142477

- A World manufacturer identifier
- B Brake system, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, Restraint Devices and their locations
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type
- D Engine type
- E Check digit
- F Model year
- G Assembly plant
- H Production sequence number

# Capacities and Specifications


## VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

**MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.**

DATE: XX/XX GVWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)  
 FRONT GAWR: REAR GAWR:  
 XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH  
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES  
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS  
 AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX  
 TYPE: XXXX XXXXX



EXT PNT: XX XXXXXX RC: XX DSO: XXXX  
 WB INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXX  
 XXX XX XXX X XX X XXXX XXXX  
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXXXX-XX

E167469

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.


## TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION

**MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.**

DATE: XX/XX GVWR: XXXX KG (XXXX LB)  
 FRONT GAWR: REAR GAWR:  
 XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH XXXX KG (XXXX LB) WITH  
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX TIRES  
 XXXXXXXX RIMS XXXXXXXX RIMS  
 AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD AT XXXX kPa/ XXX PSI COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.

VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX  
 TYPE: XXXX XXXXX



EXT PNT: XX XXXXXX RC: XX DSO: XXXX  
 WB INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXX  
 XXX XX XXX X XX X XXXX XXXX  
 XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXX =XXXX-XXXXXXXX-XX

E167814

The transmission code is on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table shows the transmission code along with the transmission description.

| Description                              | Code |
|--|------|
| Five-speed automatic transmission 5R110W | T    |
| Six-speed automatic transmission 6R140   | P    |

# Capacities and Specifications

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 5.4L V8

### WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant R-134a under high pressure. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury. Have the air conditioning refrigerant system serviced only by qualified personnel.

| Item  | Capacity  |
|---|---|
| Engine oil (with oil filter)                            | 6.0 qt (5.7 L)                                    |
| Engine coolant  | 28.7 qt (27.2 L)                                  |
| Engine coolant - with auxiliary rear heat               | 30.7 qt (29.1 L)                                  |
| Brake fluid   | Between MIN/MAX on brake fluid reservoir          |
| Power steering fluid                                    | Between MIN/MAX on power steering fluid reservoir |
| Automatic transmission fluid                            | 18.7 qt (17.7 L) *                                |
| Dana Limited Slip Axle fluid<br>M70FF (M267FF)<br>E-350 | 6.6 pt (3.1L)**                                   |
| Dana Limited Slip Axle fluid<br>M70HD (M273HD)<br>E-450 | 9.7 pt (4.6L)**                                   |
| Dana conventional axle fluid<br>M70FF (M267FF)<br>E-350 | 6.6 pt (3.1L)**                                   |
| Dana conventional axle fluid<br>M70HD (M273HD)<br>E-450 | 9.7 pt (4.6L)**                                   |
| Windshield washer fluid                                 | Fill as required                                  |
| Fuel tank   | 40 gal (151 L)                                    |
| Fuel tank<br>(Optional or E-Super Duty)                 | 55 gal (208 L)                                    |
| A/C refrigerant   | 1.9 lb (0.85 kg)                                  |



## Capacities and Specifications

| Item  | Capacity            |
|---|---------------------|
| A/C refrigerant compressor oil                | 8.0 fl oz (237 ml)  |
| A/C refrigerant compressor oil (Prep package) | 16.0 fl oz (473 ml) |

\*Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

\*\*Fill Dana rear axles to 1/4 inch — 9/16 inch (6 mm — 14 mm) below the bottom of the fill hole.

## Specifications

### Materials

| Name  | Specification |
|---|---------------|
| Recommended motor oil (U.S.):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil<br>XO-5W30-QSP | WSS-M2C946-A  |
| Recommended Motor oil (Canada):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Super Premium Motor Oil<br>CXO-5W30-LSP12      | WSS-M2C946-A  |
| Recommended motor oil (Mexico):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Motor Oil<br>MXO-5W30-QSP            | WSS-M2C946-A  |
| Optional motor oil (U.S. and Mexico):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Full Synthetic Motor Oil<br>XO-5W30-QFS  | WSS-M2C946-A  |
| Optional Motor oil (Canada):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Motor Oil<br>CXO-5W30-LFS12             | WSS-M2C946-A  |
| Engine coolant (U.S. and Mexico):<br>Motorcraft® Gold Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted<br>VC-7DIL-B        | WSS-M97B51-A1 |
| Engine coolant (Canada):<br>Motorcraft® Gold Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted<br>CVC-7DIL-B2               | WSS-M97B51-A1 |
| Brake fluid:<br>Motorcraft® DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance<br>Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid      | WSS-M6C65-A2  |

## Capacities and Specifications

| Name   | Specification             |
|--|---------------------------|
| PM-20  |                           |
| Power steering fluid and Automatic transmission fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid XT-10-QLVC | WSS-M2C938-A<br>MERCON LV |
| Power steering fluid and Automatic transmission fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid CXT-10-LV12         | WSS-M2C938-A<br>MERCON LV |
| Dana Limited Slip axle fluid (U.S.): Motorcraft® SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant XY-75W90-QLS                                      | ES-PM-M2013<br>GL-5       |
| Dana Limited Slip axle fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant CXY-75W90-LS12                                  | ES-PM-M2013<br>GL-5       |
| Dana conventional axle fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant XY-80W90-QL                         | WSP-M2C197-A              |
| Dana conventional axle fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant CXY-80W90-1L                                 | WSP-M2C197-A              |
| Windshield washer fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2                     | WSS-M14P19-A              |
| Windshield washer fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid CXC-37-(A, B, D, F)                              | WSS-M14P19-A              |
| A/C refrigerant (U.S.): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant YN-19   | WSH-M17B19-A              |
| A/C refrigerant (Canada): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant CYN-16-R  | WSH-M17B19-A              |
| A/C refrigerant (Mexico): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant MYN-19  | WSH-M17B19-A              |

## Capacities and Specifications

| Name   | Specification |
|--|---------------|
| A/C refrigerant compressor oil:<br>Motorcraft® PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil<br>YN-12-D | WSH-MIC231-B  |
| Multi-purpose grease:<br>Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray<br>XL-5                  | ESB-MIC93-B   |
| Lock cylinders (U.S.):<br>Penetrating and Lock Lubricant<br>XL-1                         | --            |
| Lock cylinders (Canada):<br>Penetrating Fluid<br>CXC-51-A                                | --            |
| Lock cylinders (Mexico):<br>Penetrating and Lock Lubricant<br>MXL-1                      | --            |
| Door weatherstrips:<br>Silicone Spray Lubricant<br>XL-6                                  | ESR-M13P4-A   |

If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade, this may lead to:

- Component damage which is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.



E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC).

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

# Capacities and Specifications

**Note:** Ford recommends using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet the Ford performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.

**Note:** Automatic transmissions that require MERCON LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON LV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 6.8L

### WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant R-134a under high pressure. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury. Have the air conditioning refrigerant system serviced only by qualified personnel.

| Item  | Capacity  |
|---|---|
| Engine oil (with filter)                                | 6.0 qt (5.7 L) <sup>1</sup>                       |
| Engine coolant  | 30.4 qt (28.8 L)                                  |
| Engine coolant - with auxiliary rear heat               | 32.5 qt (30.8 L)                                  |
| Brake fluid   | Between MIN/MAX on brake fluid reservoir          |
| Power steering fluid                                    | Between MIN/MAX on power steering fluid reservoir |
| Automatic transmission fluid                            | 17.4 qt (16.5 L) <sup>2</sup>                     |
| Dana Limited Slip Axle fluid<br>M70FF (M267FF)<br>E-350 | 6.6 pt (3.1L) <sup>3</sup>                        |
| Dana Limited Slip Axle fluid<br>M70HD (M273HD)<br>E-450 | 9.7 pt (4.6L) <sup>3</sup>                        |
| Dana conventional axle fluid<br>M70FF (M267FF)<br>E-350 | 6.6 pt (3.1L) <sup>3</sup>                        |
| Dana conventional axle fluid<br>M70HD (M273HD)          | 9.7 pt (4.6L) <sup>3</sup>                        |

# Capacities and Specifications

| Item   | Capacity            |
|--|---------------------|
| E-450  |                     |
| Windshield washer fluid                          | Fill as required    |
| Fuel tank  | 40 gal (151 L)      |
| Fuel tank<br>(Optional or E-Super Duty)          | 55 gal (208 L)      |
| A/C refrigerant                                  | 1.9 lb (0.85 kg)    |
| A/C refrigerant compressor oil                   | 8.0 fl oz (237 ml)  |
| A/C refrigerant compressor oil<br>(Prep package) | 16.0 fl oz (473 ml) |

<sup>1</sup>Reference the reservoir cap for proper fluid.

<sup>2</sup>Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

<sup>3</sup>Fill Dana rear axles to 1/4 inch — 9/16 inch (6 mm — 14 mm) below the bottom of the fill hole.

## Specifications

### Materials

| Name   | Specification             |
|--|---------------------------|
| Recommended motor oil (U.S.)<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil<br>XO-5W20-QSP | WSS-M2C945-A <sup>1</sup> |
| Recommended motor oil (Canada)<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil<br>CXO-5W20-LSP12      | WSS-M2C945-A <sup>1</sup> |
| Recommended motor oil (Mexico)<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil<br>MXO-5W20-QSP            | WSS-M2C945-A <sup>1</sup> |
| Optional motor oil (U.S. and Mexico)<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil<br>XO-5W20-QFS  | WSS-M2C945-A <sup>1</sup> |
| Optional Motor oil (Canada)<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil<br>CXO-5W20-LFS12             | WSS-M2C945-A <sup>1</sup> |

## Capacities and Specifications

| Name  | Specification             |
|---|---------------------------|
| Recommended motor oil (U.S.):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil<br>XO-5W30-QSP   | WSS-M2C946-A <sup>1</sup> |
| Recommended Motor oil (Canada):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Super Premium Motor Oil<br>CXO-5W30-LSP12  | WSS-M2C946-A <sup>1</sup> |
| Recommended motor oil (Mexico):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Motor Oil<br>MXO-5W30-QSP  | WSS-M2C946-A <sup>1</sup> |
| Optional motor oil (U.S. and Mexico):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Full Synthetic Motor Oil<br>XO-5W30-QFS  | WSS-M2C946-A <sup>1</sup> |
| Optional Motor oil (Canada):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Motor Oil<br>CXO-5W30-LFS12   | WSS-M2C946-A <sup>1</sup> |
| Engine coolant (U.S. and Mexico):<br>Motorcraft® Gold Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted<br>VC-7DIL-B  | WSS-M97B51-A1             |
| Engine coolant (Canada):<br>Motorcraft® Gold Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted<br>CVC-7DIL-B2   | WSS-M97B51-A1             |
| Brake fluid:<br>Motorcraft® DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance<br>Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid<br>PM-20                                     | WSS-M6C65-A2              |
| Power steering fluid and<br>Automatic transmission fluid (U.S. and Mexico):<br>Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid<br>XT-10-QLVC | WSS-M2C938-A<br>MERCON LV |
| Power steering fluid and<br>Automatic transmission fluid (Canada):<br>Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid<br>CXT-10-LV12         | WSS-M2C938-A<br>MERCON LV |
| Dana Limited Slip axle fluid (U.S.):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant<br>XY-75W90-QLS   | ES-PM-M2013<br>GL-5       |
| Dana Limited Slip axle fluid (Canada):  | ES-PM-M2013               |

## Capacities and Specifications

| Name  | Specification |
|---|---------------|
| Motorcraft® SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant<br>CXY-75W90-LS12   | GL-5          |
| Dana conventional axle fluid (U.S. and Mexico):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant<br>XY-80W90-QL        | WSP-M2C197-A  |
| Dana conventional axle fluid (Canada):<br>Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant<br>CXY-80W90-1L                | WSP-M2C197-A  |
| Windshield washer fluid (U.S. and Mexico):<br>Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate<br>with Bitterant<br>ZC-32-B2 | WSS-M14P19-A  |
| Windshield washer fluid (Canada):<br>Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid<br>CXC-37-(A, B, D, F)             | WSS-M14P19-A  |
| A/C refrigerant (U.S.):<br>Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant<br>YN-19  | WSH-M17B19-A  |
| A/C refrigerant (Canada):<br>Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant<br>CYN-16-R   | WSH-M17B19-A  |
| A/C refrigerant (Mexico):<br>Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant<br>MYN-19   | WSH-M17B19-A  |
| A/C refrigerant compressor oil:<br>Motorcraft® PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil<br>YN-12-D                                    | WSH-M1C231-B  |
| Multi-purpose grease:<br>Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray<br>XL-5   | ESB-M1C93-B   |
| Lock cylinders (U.S.):<br>Penetrating and Lock Lubricant<br>XL-1  | --            |
| Lock cylinders (Canada):<br>Penetrating Fluid<br>CXC-51-A   | --            |

# Capacities and Specifications

| Name  | Specification |
|---|---------------|
| Lock cylinders (Mexico):<br>Penetrating and Lock Lubricant<br>MXL-1 | --            |
| Door weatherstrips:<br>Silicone Spray Lubricant<br>XL-6             | ESR-M13P4-A   |

<sup>1</sup>Reference the reservoir cap for proper fluid.

If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade, this may lead to:

- Component damage which is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.



E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC).

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

**Note:** *Ford recommends using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet the Ford performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

**Note:** *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON LV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.*



# Audio System

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

- AM: 530, 540-1700, 1710 kHz
- FM: 87.9-107.7, 107.9 MHz

| Radio Reception Factors      |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <b>Distance and strength</b> | The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.  |
| <b>Terrain</b>               | Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception. |
| <b>Station overload</b>      | When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.                      |

### CD and CD Player Information

**Note:** CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.

**Note:** Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.

**Note:** Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

### MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

# Audio System

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

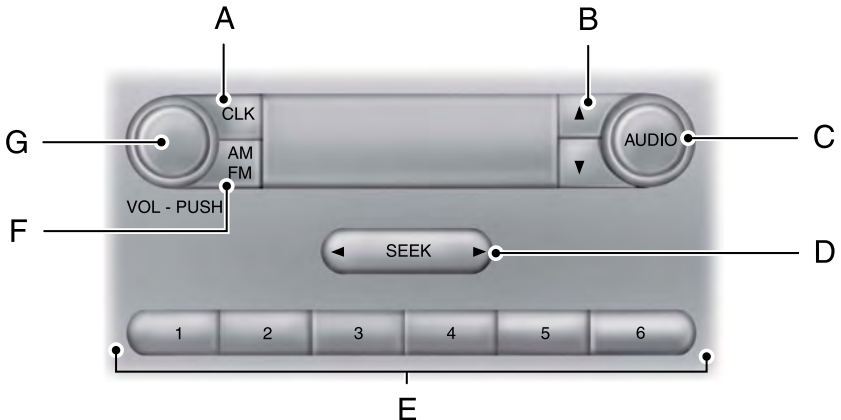
In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E163157

# Audio System

---

- A **CLOCK:** Press to display the clock. To set the time, press and hold until the hours start to flash. Press the arrow buttons to adjust the hours, then repeat to set the minutes. Press again to exit clock mode.
- B **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band.
- C **AUDIO:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.
- D **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction.
- E **Numeric keypad:** In radio mode, you can store your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns.
- F **AM/FM:** Press to access different audio modes, for example AM, FM, audio input jack.
- G **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC

### WARNING

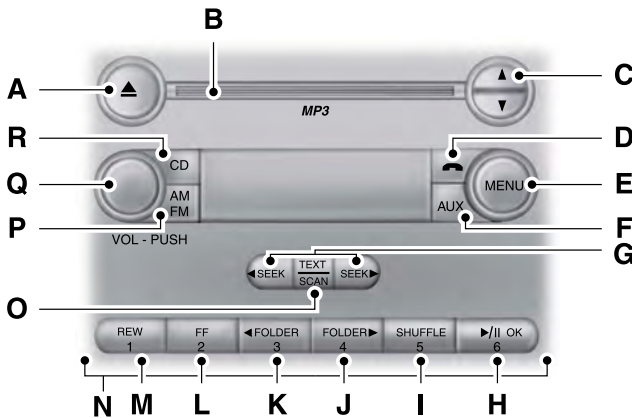


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

**Note:** *You can operate your audio system for up to one hour after you switch off the ignition. Press the power control to operate the system with the ignition turned off. The system automatically turns off after one hour.*

# Audio System



E194379

- A Eject:** Press to eject a CD.
- B CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- C Tune:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band.
- D PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See your SYNC information.
- E MENU:** Press to access different audio system features.  
Set the time by pressing **MENU** until **SET HOURS** or **SET MINUTES** appears and using the arrow buttons to adjust the time.
- COMPRESS** (Compression) is only available in CD and MP3 modes. Switching compression on brings the soft and loud passages together for a more consistent listening level. Use the **SEEK** buttons and up and down arrow buttons to switch this mode on and off.
- F AUX:** Press to access or switch between devices you plug into your vehicle.
- G Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In CD mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward or backward through the current track.
- H Play, Pause and OK:** Press to mute the station. Press to either play or pause a track. Press **OK** to confirm menu selections.
- I SHUFFLE:** Play music on the selected CD or MP3 folder in random order.
- J Folder:** Press to access the next folder on an MP3 disc.

# Audio System

---

- K **Folder:** Press to access the previous folder on an MP3 disc.
- L **FF:** Press to manually fast forward in a CD track or MP3 file.
- M **REW:** Press to manually rewind in a CD track or MP3 file.
- N **Numeric keypad:** In radio mode, you can store your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. The **AUTOSET** function in the **MENU** options does not override your original presets.
- O **TEXT/SCAN:** Press to manually search the frequency band. In radio, CD and MP3 modes, press and hold to hear a brief sampling of radio stations, CD tracks or MP3 files. In CD and MP3 modes, press and release to display track title, artist name and disc title. In text mode, sometimes the display requires additional text to show. When the < / > indicator is on, press TEXT and then use the SEEK buttons to view the additional display text.
- P **AM/FM:** Press to access different audio modes, for example AM, FM.
- Q **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume. The **SPEEDVOL** in the **MENU** options compensates for noise levels when vehicle speed increases.
- R **CD:** Press this button to listen to a CD.

## DIGITAL RADIO

**Note:** *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit [www.hdradio.com](http://www.hdradio.com).

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the HD Radio logo on your screen. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

# Audio System

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

- **Scan** allows you to hear a brief sampling of all available stations. This feature still works when HD Radio reception is on, although it does not scan for HD2-HD7 channels. You may see the HD logo appear if the station has a digital broadcast.

- **Memory presets** allow you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

**Note:** *As with any saved radio station, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

## HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

| Potential reception issues |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| Reception area             | If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.   |
|                            | If you are listening to HD1, the system switches back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.   |
| Station blending           | When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound. |

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

# Audio System

| Potential station issues   |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| Issues   | Cause   | Action  |
| Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio.<br>Increase or decrease in audio volume.                 | This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.   | No action required. This is a broadcast issue.                                  |
| Sound fading or blending in and out.   | The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.   | No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.  |
| There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or <b>Direct Tune</b> . | The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available. | No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available. |
| Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.        | The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.                | No action required. The station is not available in your current location.      |
| Text information does not match currently playing audio.   | Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.  | Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*                       |
| There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.                             | Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.  | Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*                       |
| HD2-HD7 stations not found when <b>Scan</b> is pressed.  | Pressing <b>Scan</b> disables HD2-HD7 channel search.   | No action required. This is normal behavior.                                    |

\* [http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report\\_radio\\_station\\_experiences](http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences)

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

## SATELLITE RADIO (If Equipped)

SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, visit [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) in the United States, [www.siriusxm.ca](http://www.siriusxm.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

# Audio System

**Note:** This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.

## Satellite Radio Reception Factors

| Potential satellite radio reception issues |  |
|--|--|
| Antenna obstructions                       | For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible. |
| Terrain                                    | Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception. |
| Station overload                           | When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.                               |
| Satellite radio signal interference        | Your display may show ACQUIRING . . . to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.  |

## SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service

**Note:** SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.



E142593

SIRIUS satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SIRIUS satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) in the United States, [www.siriusxm.ca](http://www.siriusxm.ca) in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

## Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. When in satellite radio mode, tune to channel 0.



# Audio System

## Troubleshooting

| Message  | Condition   | Action   |
|--|---|--|
| Acquiring...                                     | Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.       | No action required. This message should disappear shortly.   |
| Satellite antenna fault<br>SIRIUS system failure | There is an internal module or system failure present.                                | If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service. |
| Invalid Channel                                  | The channel is no longer available.   | Tune to another channel or choose another preset.  |
| Unsubscribed Channel                             | Your subscription does not include this channel.                                      | Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.  |
| No Signal  | The signal is lost from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to your vehicle antenna. | The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.  |
| Updating...                                      | Update of channel programming in progress.  | No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.  |
| Questions? Call<br>1-888-539-7474                | Your satellite service is no longer available.  | Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.   |
| None found<br>Check Channel Guide                | All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.               | Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.   |
| Subscription Updated                             | SIRIUS has updated the channels available for your vehicle.                           | No action required.  |

# Audio System

---

## USB PORT (If Equipped)

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

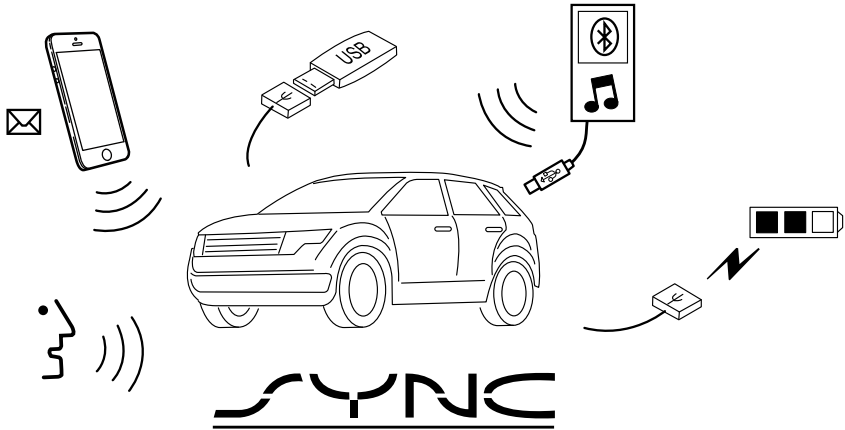
---



E201595

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See **Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player** (page 244).

## GENERAL INFORMATION



E198355

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone and portable media player. This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls.
- Access and play music from your portable music player.
- Use 911 Assist, Vehicle Health Report and SYNC Services (Traffic, Directions & Information).\*
- Use applications, such as Stitcher, via SYNC AppLink.\*\*
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands.
- Stream music from your connected phone.

- Text message.
- Use the advanced voice recognition system.
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

\*These features are not available in all markets and require activation.

\*\*Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

### Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you cannot answer on your own.

Monday–Saturday, 8:30am–9:00pm EST.

Sunday, 10:30am–7:30pm EST.

In the United States, call 1-800-392-3673.

In Canada, call 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

## SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Required to activate Vehicle Health Report and to view the reports online.
- Required to activate the subscription-based SYNC Services and to personalize your Saved Points and Favorites.
- Essential for keeping up with the latest software downloads available for SYNC.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.

## Driving Restrictions

For your safety, certain features are speed-dependent and restricted when your vehicle is traveling over 3 mph (5 km/h).

## Safety Information

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

## Privacy Information

When a cellular phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that cellular phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more cellular features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cellular phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log will remain in the vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the sections on 911 Assist, Vehicle Health Report, and Traffic, Directions and Information.

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you.

### Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- After pressing the voice button, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time, you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice button.

### Initiating a Voice Session



Initiate a voice session by pressing the voice button on the steering wheel controls. See

**Voice Control** (page 42).

### When prompted you can say any of the following:

| Voice command                | If you want the system to carry out the following |
|------------------------------|---|
| Bluetooth Audio              | Stream audio from your phone.                     |
| Cancel                       | Cancel the requested action.                      |
| mobile (apps   applications) | Access mobile applications.                       |
| Phone                        | Make calls.                                       |
| USB [1]                      | Access the device connected to your USB port.     |
| Vehicle Health (Report)      | Run a vehicle health report.                      |

| Voice command                      | If you want the system to carry out the following            |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Voice Settings   Voice Preferences | Adjust the level of voice interaction and feedback.          |
| Help                               | Hear a list of voice commands available in the current mode. |

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where (cancel | stop | exit) appears you say; cancel or stop or exit.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where mobile (apps | applications) appears, you must say mobile followed by either apps or applications.

You do not need to say words that appear within square brackets. For example, for where (USB [stick] | IPOD | MP3 [player]) appears, you can say USB or USB stick.

**Note:** SYNC Services and Vehicle health report are only available in the United States of America.

## System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings). You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

### Adjusting the Interaction Level



Initiate a voice session by pressing the voice button on the steering wheel controls. See

**Voice Control** (page 42).

### When prompted say the following:

| Voice command                               | If you want the system to carry out the following       |
|---|---|
| Voice Settings   Voice Preferences          |   |
| <b>Followed by either of the following:</b> |   |
| Interaction Mode Standard                   | Provide more detailed interaction and guidance.         |
| Interaction Mode Advanced                   | Provide less audible interaction and more tone prompts. |

The system defaults to the standard interaction mode.

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request. For example, the system may ask "Phone, is that

correct?". If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested and may ask you to confirm settings.

| Voice command            | If you want the system to carry out the following  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Confirmation Prompts Off | Make a best guess from the command; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings. |
| Confirmation Prompts On  | Clarify your voice command with a short question.  |

The system creates candidate lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command. When turned on, it may prompt you with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

For example, say "Say 1 after the tone to call John Doe at home. Say 2 after the tone to call Johnny Doe on mobile. Say 3 after the tone to call Jane Doe at home." You could also say "Say 1 after the tone to play John Doe, Say 2 after the tone to play Johnny Doe."

| Voice command             | If you want the system to carry out the following   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Media Candidate Lists Off | Make a best guess from the media candidate list. You may still occasionally be asked questions. |
| Media Candidate Lists On  | Clarify your voice command for media candidates.  |
| Phone Candidate Lists Off | Make a best guess from the phone candidate list. You may still occasionally be asked questions. |
| Phone Candidate Lists On  | Clarify your voice command for phone candidates.  |

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality. At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are cell phone-dependent features. To check your cell phone's compatibility, see your cell phone's manual and visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com), [www.SYNCMyRide.ca](http://www.SYNCMyRide.ca) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

### Pairing a Cell Phone for the First Time

**Note:** SYNC can support downloading up to approximately 1000 entries per Bluetooth-enabled cell phone.

**Note:** Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Put the transmission in position park (**P**) (automatic transmission) or neutral with the parking brake applied (manual transmission).

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with SYNC allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

**Press the phone button. When the display indicates there is no cell phone paired, do the following:**

| Message   | Action and Description  |
|-----------|---|
| NO PHONE  | Press the <b>OK</b> button.   |
| FIND SYNC | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Put your cell phone into Bluetooth discovery mode. See your device's manual if necessary.</li> <li>3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.</li> </ol> |



Depending on your cell phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

## Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.

**Note:** Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Put the transmission in position park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral with the parking brake applied (manual transmission).

### Press the phone button, then scroll to:

| Message      | Action  |
|--------------|---|
| PHONE SETNGS | Press the <b>OK</b> button.   |
| BT DEVICES   | Press the <b>OK</b> button.   |
| ADD DEVICE   | Press the <b>OK</b> button. When the following message appears in the display.  |
| FIND SYNC    | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Put your cell phone into Bluetooth discovery mode. See your device's manual if necessary.</li> <li>3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.</li> </ol> |

The system then prompts with questions, such as if you would like to set the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) or download your phonebook.

## Phone Voice Commands

### Press the voice icon and say:

| Voice Commands   |
|--|
| Phone  |
| <b>You can then say any of the following commands.</b> |
| Call History Incoming                                  |
| Call History Missed                                    |
| Call History Outgoing                                  |

| Voice Commands          |
|-------------------------|
| Phonebook ___           |
| Phonebook ___ at Home   |
| Phonebook ___ at Work   |
| Phonebook ___ in Office |
| Phonebook ___ on Cell   |

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing that should be the name of a contact in your phonebook. For example you could say "Call Mom".

**You can also say any of the following:**

| Voice Command      |
|--------------------|
| Call ___           |
| Call ___ at Home   |
| Call ___ at Work   |
| Call ___ in Office |
| Call ___ on Mobile |
| Call ___ on Other  |
| Dial               |

None of these commands are available until your cell phone information is completely downloaded using Bluetooth.

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing that should be the name of a contact in your phonebook. For example you could say "Call Mom".

**The following commands are only available during active calls:**

| Voice Commands |
|----------------|
| Go To Privacy  |
| Hold           |
| Join           |

## Phone Menu Commands

**To access the phone menu with voice commands, press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice Command   |
|---|
| [Phone] Menu  |
| <b>You can then say any of the following:</b>                       |
| [Phone] Connections   [Media] Connections   [Bluetooth] Connections |

| Voice Command                               |
|---|
| [Phone] Settings [Message] Notification On  |
| [Phone] Settings [Message] Notification Off |
| [Phone] Settings [Set] Phone Ringer         |
| [Phone] Settings [Set] Ringer 1             |
| [Phone] Settings [Set] Ringer 2             |
| [Phone] Settings [Set] Ringer 3             |
| [Phone] Settings [Set] Ringer Off           |
| Battery                                     |
| Phone Name                                  |
| Signal                                      |
| Text Message Inbox                          |
| Send [New] Text Message                     |

You do not need to say word contained within brackets for the system to understand your command.

**Note:** *To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or press MENU to go to the PHONE menu.*

## Phonebook Commands

When you ask SYNC to access content, for example the phonebook name or number, the requested information appears in the display to view.

## Making a Call

**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice Command | Action and Description  |
|---------------|---|
| Call ___      | This command is not available until your cell phone information is completely downloaded using Bluetooth. |
| Dial          | Use to enter a phone number digit by digit.   |

**When the system confirms the number say one of the following commands:**

|        |  |
|--------|--|
| Dial   | To confirm the number and initiate the call.                                   |
| delete | To erase the last spoken digit. You can also press the left arrow button.      |
| clear  | To erase all spoken digits. You can also press and hold the left arrow button. |

To end a call, press and hold the red phone button.

## Receiving Calls

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the phone button.
- Reject the call by pressing and holding the red phone button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

## Phone Options during an Active Call

During an active call, you have more menu features that become available, for example putting a call on hold or joining calls. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options.

**Press the MENU button during an active call, then scroll to:**

| Message                             | Action and Description  |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| CALL MENU                           | Press the <b>OK</b> button.   |
| <b>Select one of the following:</b> |   |
| PRIVACY                             | Press the <b>OK</b> button to switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cell phone for a more private conversation. |
| CALL HOLD                           | Press the <b>OK</b> button to put an active call on hold.   |
| JOIN CALLS                          | Join two separate calls. SYNC supports a maximum of three callers on a multiparty call or conference call.                            |

| Message      | Action and Description   |                             |
|--------------|--|-----------------------------|
|              | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the phone button.</li> <li>2. Access the desired contact through SYNC or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, press <b>MENU</b>.</li> <li>3. Scroll to Join Calls, and press the <b>OK</b> button. Wait until the following message appears.</li> </ol>                    |                             |
|              | JOIN CALLS   | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| ENTER TONES  | Enter tones such as numbers for passwords. Scroll until the desired number appears in the display, then press OK; a tone sounds as confirmation. Repeat as necessary.  |                             |
| PHONEBOOK    | <p>To access your phonebook contacts.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select, and then scroll through your phonebook contacts.</li> <li>2. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired selection appears in the display.</li> <li>3. Press the phone button to call the contact.</li> </ol>                        |                             |
| CALL HISTORY | <p>To access your call history log.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select, then scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed).</li> <li>2. Press the <b>OK</b> button when the desired selection appears in the display.</li> <li>3. Press the phone button to call the selection.</li> </ol> |                             |
| RETURN       | Exit the current menu.   |                             |

## Accessing Features Through the Phone Menu

The phone menu allows you to redial a number, access your call history and phonebook and sends text messages as well as access cell phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features, for example 911 Assist, Vehicle Health Report and SYNC Services.

**Press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu, then scroll to:**

| Message      | Action and Description  |        |   |        |  |
|--------------|---|--------|---|--------|--|
| PHONE REDIAL | Press the <b>OK</b> button to redial the last number called.<br>Press the <b>OK</b> button again to confirm.  |        |   |        |  |
| PHONE REDIAL | <p>Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls after you connect your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone to SYNC.<sup>1</sup></p> <p>Press the <b>OK</b> button then select one of the following and press the <b>OK</b> button again to confirm.</p> <p>INCOMING</p> <p>OUTGOING</p> <p>MISSED</p> <p>The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your cell phone connects to SYNC (if the auto download feature is on and your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone supports this feature).</p>   |        |   |        |  |
| PHONEBOOK    | <p>To browse your phonebook select:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>BROWSE</td> <td> <p>Press <b>OK</b>. Scroll down or up to the desired name and press <b>OK</b>. In addition to the Phonebook entry name, the phone number label (Work, Cell, Home or Other) shows on the display. If there are multiple phone number entries for a particular Phonebook name, you can scroll through the different phone labels at this time. Once you have the desired phone label on the screen press <b>OK</b>. The phone number that is stored under the selected label will be shown on the display. Press <b>OK</b> to dial this number.</p> </td> </tr> </table> <p>To search for a contact in your phone book select:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>SEARCH</td> <td> <p>Press <b>OK</b>. Scroll down until you see the first letter of your phonebook entry. Press <b>OK</b>. Scroll down until you see the second letter of your desired phonebook entry. Press <b>OK</b>.</p> </td> </tr> </table> | BROWSE | <p>Press <b>OK</b>. Scroll down or up to the desired name and press <b>OK</b>. In addition to the Phonebook entry name, the phone number label (Work, Cell, Home or Other) shows on the display. If there are multiple phone number entries for a particular Phonebook name, you can scroll through the different phone labels at this time. Once you have the desired phone label on the screen press <b>OK</b>. The phone number that is stored under the selected label will be shown on the display. Press <b>OK</b> to dial this number.</p> | SEARCH | <p>Press <b>OK</b>. Scroll down until you see the first letter of your phonebook entry. Press <b>OK</b>. Scroll down until you see the second letter of your desired phonebook entry. Press <b>OK</b>.</p> |
| BROWSE       | <p>Press <b>OK</b>. Scroll down or up to the desired name and press <b>OK</b>. In addition to the Phonebook entry name, the phone number label (Work, Cell, Home or Other) shows on the display. If there are multiple phone number entries for a particular Phonebook name, you can scroll through the different phone labels at this time. Once you have the desired phone label on the screen press <b>OK</b>. The phone number that is stored under the selected label will be shown on the display. Press <b>OK</b> to dial this number.</p>   |        |   |        |  |
| SEARCH       | <p>Press <b>OK</b>. Scroll down until you see the first letter of your phonebook entry. Press <b>OK</b>. Scroll down until you see the second letter of your desired phonebook entry. Press <b>OK</b>.</p>  |        |   |        |  |

# SYNC™

| Message        | Action and Description  |
|----------------|---|
|                | <p>Repeat entering letters to narrow your search. When you are satisfied with your entry press the right arrow key on the bezel.</p> <p>SYNC will jump to the phonebook contact name that matches your entry. Press <b>OK</b>.</p> <p>In addition to the Phonebook entry name, the phone number label (Work, Cell, Home or Other) shows on the display. If there are multiple phone number entries for a particular Phonebook name, you can scroll through the different phone labels at this time. Once you have the desired phone label on the screen press <b>OK</b>.</p> <p>The phone number that is stored under the selected label will be shown on the display. Press <b>OK</b> to dial this number.</p> |
| TEXT MESSAGE   | Press the <b>OK</b> button to send, download, read and delete text messages. <sup>1</sup>   |
| PHONE SETNGS   | View your cell phone's status, set ring tones, select your message notification, change phonebook entries and automatically download your cell phone content among other features. <sup>1</sup>   |
| SYNC Services  | Access the SYNC Services portal where you can request various types of information, for example traffic reports and directions. <sup>3</sup>  |
| 911 Assist     | Automatically place an emergency call to a 911 operator following a crash. <sup>4</sup>   |
| Vehicle Health | Create and receive a diagnostic report card on your vehicle. <sup>3</sup>   |
| APPLICATIONS   | Interact with SYNC-capable mobile applications on your smart-phone.   |

| Message      | Action and Description   |
|--------------|--|
| SYS SETTINGS | Access Bluetooth Devices menu listings and advanced menu listings. |
| EXIT MENU    | Press the <b>OK</b> button to exit the phone menu.                 |

<sup>1</sup> This is a cell phone-dependent feature.

<sup>2</sup> This is a cell phone-dependent and speed-dependent feature.

<sup>3</sup> This is an optional feature and available in the United States only.

<sup>4</sup> This is an optional feature and available in the United States and Canada only.

## Text Messaging

**Note:** This is a cell phone-dependent feature.

SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

### Receiving a Text Message

**Note:** This is a cell phone-dependent feature. Your cell phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.

**To have SYNC read you the message using voice commands, press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice Command                                   | Action and Description                              |
|---|---|
| Read Message   Read Text Message   Text Message | SYNC will read the most recent text message to you. |

To open the text message, press OK to receive and open the text message. Press OK again and SYNC reads your message aloud as you are not able to view the message. You can then also choose whether you'd like to reply or forward the message.

**Note:** Forwarding a text message is a speed-dependent feature. It is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.

**Note:** Only one recipient is allowed per text message.

When a new text message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the information display indicates you have a new message.

**Following the notification you can do any of the following:**

Do nothing to have the message go into your text message inbox.

**Reply or forward the message, press OK and scroll to choose between:**

| Message      | Action and Description   |
|--------------|--|
| REPLY TO MSG | Press the <b>OK</b> button to access and then scroll through the list of pre-defined messages to send.                             |
| FORWARD MSG  | Press the <b>OK</b> button to forward the message to anyone in your Phonebook or Call History. You can also choose enter a number. |

**Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages**

Text messaging is a cell phone-dependent feature. If your cell phone is compatible, SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages.

**Note:** *Sending a text message is a speed-dependent feature. It is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.*

**Note:** *You can only have one recipient per text message.*

**Press the phone button, then scroll to:**

| Message      | Action and Description      |
|--------------|-----------------------------|
| TEXT MESSAGE | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |

**Select one of the following:**

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| SEND MSG? | <p>Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Scroll to your desired message.</li> <li>3. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>4. Scroll through your phonebook, call history entries or enter a new number.</li> <li>5. Press the <b>OK</b> button to enter the desired contact.</li> <li>6. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the system asks if you would like to send the message. The system sends each text message with the following signature: This message was sent from my Ford.</li> </ol> |
|-----------|--|



| Message      | Action and Description   |
|--------------|--|
| DOWNLOAD MSG | Allows you to download your unread messages to SYNC. To download the messages, press the <b>OK</b> button to select. The display indicates the system is downloading your messages. When downloading is complete, SYNC returns you to the inbox. |
| DELETE ALL   | Allows you to delete current text messages from SYNC. To delete the messages, press the <b>OK</b> button to select. The display indicates when it is finished deleting all your text messages. SYNC returns you to the text message menu.        |
| RETURN       | Press the <b>OK</b> button to exit the current menu.   |

## Accessing Your Phone Settings

These are cell phone-dependent features. Your cell phone settings allow you to access and adjust some features. For example ring tones, text message notification, modify your phonebook and set up automatic download.

### Press the phone button, then scroll to:

| Message                             | Action and Description   |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| PHONE SETNGS                        | Press the <b>OK</b> button.  |
| <b>Select one of the following:</b> |  |
| PHONE STATUS                        | See the provider, name, signal power, battery power and roaming status of your connected cell phone. Press <b>OK</b> to select and scroll to view the information. When done, press <b>OK</b> again to return to the phone status menu.                          |
| SET RINGER                          | Select which ring tone sounds during an incoming call. You can choose one of the system ring tones or your cell phone ring tones. Press the <b>OK</b> button and scroll to hear the available options. You can also choose to use to use your phone's ring tone. |
|                                     | Press the <b>OK</b> button to select the desired ring tone. If your cell phone supports in-band ringing, your cell phone ring plays when you choose the phone ringer option.   |
| MSG NTFY                            | You have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives.  |

| Message          | Action and Description  |  |
|------------------|---|--|
|                  | Press the <b>OK</b> button then select one of the following and press the <b>OK</b> button again to confirm.<br>MSG NTFY ON<br>MSG NTFY OFF |  |
| MODIFY PHONEBOOK | Modify the contents of your phone book (such as add, delete, download). Press OK to select and scroll between:                              |  |
|                  | ADD CONTACTS  | Press the <b>OK</b> button to add more contacts from your phonebook. Push the desired contact(s) on your cell phone. See your cell phone's manual on how to push contacts.   |
|                  | DELETE PHONEBOOK  | Press <b>OK</b> to delete the current phone book and call history. When Delete Phonebook appears, press <b>OK</b> to confirm. SYNC takes you back to the Phone Settings menu.  |
|                  | DOWNLOAD PHONEBOOK  | Press <b>OK</b> to select and press OK again when Confirm Download? appears.   |
| AUTODOWNLOAD     | Automatically download your phone book each time your phone connects to SYNC. Press OK to select.   |  |
|                  | AUTO ON?  | When this message appears, press <b>OK</b> to have your phonebook automatically downloaded each time. Select Off to NOT download your phonebook every time your phone connects to SYNC. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your specific phone is connected to SYNC. * |
| SPEAK NAMES      | When enabled, SYNC speaks the contact name that is displayed on the screen during phonebook browsing.                                       |  |
| RETURN           | Exit the current menu.  |  |

\* Downloading times are cell phone-dependent and quantity-dependent. When Auto Download is on, it automatically deletes any changes, additions or deletions saved since your last download.

## System Settings

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth Devices and Advanced menu features. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options.

## Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to add, connect and delete devices, set a cell phone as primary as well as turn your Bluetooth feature on and off.

**Press the Phone button to enter the Phone Menu, then scroll to:**

| <b>Message</b>                      | <b>Action and Description</b>   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| SYS SETTINGS                        | Press the <b>OK</b> button.   |
| BT DEVICES                          | Press the <b>OK</b> button.   |
| <b>Select one of the following:</b> |   |
| ADD DEVICE                          | See <b>Using SYNC™ With Your Phone</b> (page 221). <sup>1</sup>   |
| CONNECT BT                          | Connect a previously paired Bluetooth-enabled phone. <sup>2</sup><br>Press <b>OK</b> to select and view a list of previously paired phones. Scroll until the desired device is chosen, then press OK to connect the phone.  |
| SET PRIMARY?                        | Set a previously paired phone as your primary phone. <sup>3</sup><br>Press <b>OK</b> to select and scroll to select the desired phone. Press OK to confirm.   |
| BT ON/OFF                           | Turn the Bluetooth feature on and off. <sup>4</sup><br>Press <b>OK</b> and scroll to toggle between On and Off. When the desired selection is chosen, press <b>OK</b> .<br>Setting Bluetooth to off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and turns off all Bluetooth features. |
| DEL DEVICE                          | Delete a paired cell phone.<br>Press the <b>OK</b> button and scroll to select the device. Press <b>OK</b> to confirm.  |
| DELETE ALL                          | Delete all previously paired phones (and all information originally saved with those phones).<br>Press <b>OK</b> to select.   |
| RETURN                              | Exit the current menu.  |

<sup>1</sup> This is a speed-dependent feature. It is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.

<sup>2</sup> You can only connect one device at a time. When another cell phone is connected, the previous one is disconnected.

<sup>3</sup> SYNC attempts to connect with the primary phone at every ignition cycle. When a phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an asterisk (\*).

<sup>4</sup> Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and deactivates all Bluetooth features.

## Advanced

The Advanced menu allows you to access

and set prompts, languages, defaults, perform a master reset, install an application and view system information.

**To access the advanced menu, press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu, the scroll to:**

| Message                             | Action and Description   |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| SYS SETTINGS                        | Press <b>OK</b> .  |
| ADVANCED                            | Press <b>OK</b> .  |
| <b>Select one of the following:</b> |  |
| PROMPTS                             | <p>Get help from SYNC by using questions, helpful hints or asking you for a specific action. To turn these prompts on or off:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and scroll to select between On and Off.</li> <li>2. Press the <b>OK</b> button when the desired selection appears in the display. SYNC returns you to the Advanced menu.</li> </ol>  |
| LANGUAGES                           | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press <b>OK</b> to select and then scroll through the languages. Choose between English, Français and Español. Once selected, all of the radio displays and prompts are in the selected language.</li> <li>2. Press <b>OK</b> when the desired selection appears in the display. If you change the language setting, the display indicates that the system is updating. When complete, SYNC returns you to the Advanced menu.</li> </ol> |
| DEFAULTS                            | <p>Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information, for example phonebook, call history, text messages or paired devices.</p> <p>Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and then press <b>OK</b> again when the following message appears in the display.</p> <p>RESTORE?</p>   |
| MASTER RESET                        | <p>Completely erase all information stored on SYNC, for example phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices, and return the system to the factory default settings.</p> <p>Press <b>OK</b> to select. The display indicates when complete. SYNC returns you to the Advanced menu.</p>  |
| SYNC REBOOT                         | Press <b>OK</b> to select.   |

| Message     | Action and Description  |   |
|-------------|---|---|
|             | CONFIRM REBOOT?   | Press <b>OK</b> to select. You only need to press the OK button once. SYNC will be unresponsive for 2-4 minutes while it is rebooting. Wait 2-4 minutes before attempting to execute a SYNC command |
| INSTALL APP | Install applications you have downloaded. Press the <b>OK</b> button and scroll to select. Press the <b>OK</b> button to confirm. |   |
| SYSTEM INFO | Access the Auto Version number as well as the FDN number. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.                                   |   |
| RETURN      | Exit the current menu.  |   |

## SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES (If Equipped)

In order for the following features to work, your cell phone must be compatible with SYNC. To check your phone's compatibility, visit [www.SYNCMYRide.com](http://www.SYNCMYRide.com), [www.SYNCMYRide.ca](http://www.SYNCMYRide.ca) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

- SYNC Services\*: Provides access to traffic, directions and information such as travel, horoscopes, stock prices and more.
- 911 Assist: Can alert 911 in the event of an emergency.
- Vehicle Health Report\*: Provides a diagnostic and maintenance report card of your vehicle.

\*This is an optional feature and available in the United States only.

## 911 Assist (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.



Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

**Note:** *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.*

**Note:** Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.

**Note:** If any user turns 911 Assist on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is turned off, either a voice message plays or a display message (or icon) comes on (or both) when your vehicle is started after a previously paired phone connects.

**Note:** Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com), [www.SYNCMyRide.ca](http://www.SYNCMyRide.ca) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca).

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 27). Important information about airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 115). Important information about the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

## Switching 911 Assist On or Off

**Press the phone button to enter the phone menu and scroll to:**

| Message    | Action and Description   |
|------------|--|
| 911 Assist | Press the <b>OK</b> button to confirm and enter the 911 Assist menu.             |
| On<br>Off  | Press the <b>OK</b> button when the desired option appears in the radio display. |

**Off selections include:**

| Message               | Action and Description   |
|-----------------------|--|
| Off with reminder:    | Provides a display and voice reminder at phone connection at vehicle start.    |
| Off without reminder: | Provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder at phone connection. |

To make sure that 911 Assist works correctly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.

- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

## In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

## 911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

## 911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you turn on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

## Vehicle Health Report (If Equipped, United States Only)

### WARNING



Always follow scheduled maintenance instructions, regularly inspect your vehicle, and seek repair for any damage or problem you suspect. Vehicle Health Report supplements, but cannot replace, normal maintenance and vehicle inspection. Vehicle Health Report only monitors certain systems electronically monitored by your vehicle and will not monitor or report the status of any other system, (such as brake lining wear). Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

---

**Note:** *This feature is only available in the United States.*

**Note:** Your Vehicle Health Report feature requires activation before use. Visit [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) to register. There is no fee or subscription associated with Vehicle Health Report, but you must register to use this feature.

**Note:** This feature may not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your cellular phone. Before running a report, review the Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice.

**Note:** In order to allow a break-in period for your vehicle, you may not be able to create a Vehicle Health Report until your vehicle odometer has reached 200 miles.

**Note:** Cellular phone and SMS charges may apply when making a report.

Register for Vehicle Health Report and set your report preferences at [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com). After registering, you can request a Vehicle Health Report (inside your vehicle). Return to your account at [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com) to view your report. You can also choose for SYNC to remind you automatically to run reports at specific mileage intervals.

The system allows you to check your vehicle's overall health in the form of a diagnostic report card. The Vehicle Health Report contains valuable information, for example:

- Vehicle diagnostic information
- Scheduled maintenance
- Open recalls and Field Service Actions
- Items noted during vehicle inspections by an authorized dealer that still need servicing.

You can run a vehicle health report after your vehicle has been running a minimum of 60 seconds. Choose one of the following options.

**To use voice commands, press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice command           | Action and Description  |
|-------------------------|---|
| Vehicle Health (Report) | The system will run a vehicle health report of your vehicle's diagnostic systems and send the results to Ford where it combines with scheduled maintenance information, open recalls, other field service actions and vehicle inspection items that still need servicing by an authorized dealer. |

**To use the screen, press the phone button, then scroll to:**

| Message                             | Action and Description                           |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Vehicle Health                      | Press the <b>OK</b> button.                      |
| <b>Select one of the following:</b> |  |
| Auto On?                            | Press the <b>OK</b> button and select on or off. |



| Message         | Action and Description   |
|-----------------|--|
|                 | Select On to have SYNC automatically prompt you to run a health report at certain mileage intervals.*  |
| Report Interval | Scroll to select between 5000, 7500 or 10000-mile intervals. Select your desired option and press the <b>OK</b> button.  |
| Run Report      | Press the <b>OK</b> button for SYNC to run a health report of your vehicle's diagnostic systems and send the results to Ford where it combines with scheduled maintenance information, open recalls, other field service actions and vehicle inspection items that still need servicing by an authorized dealer. |
| Return          | Exit the current menu.   |

\*You must first turn this feature on before you can select the desired mileage interval.

## Vehicle Health Report Privacy Notice

When you create a Vehicle Health Report, Ford Motor Company may collect your cellular phone number (to process your report request) and diagnostic information about your vehicle. Certain versions or updates to Vehicle Health Report may also collect more vehicle information. Ford may use your vehicle information it collects for any purpose. If you do not want to disclose your cellular phone number or vehicle information, do not run the feature or set up your Vehicle Health Report profile at [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com). See [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com) (Vehicle Health Report Terms and Conditions, and Privacy Statement) for more information.

## SYNC Services: Traffic, Directions & Information (TDI) (If Equipped, United States Only)

**Note:** SYNC Services varies by trim level and model year and may require a subscription. Traffic alerts and turn-by-turn directions available in select markets. Message and data rates may apply. Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change or discontinue this product service at any time without prior notification or incurring any future obligation.

**Note:** SYNC Services requires activation before use. Visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com) to register and check your eligibility for complimentary services. Standard phone and message rates may apply. Subscription may be required. You must also have the active SYNC Services Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone paired and connected to the system in order to connect to, and use, SYNC Services. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 221).

**Note:** This feature does not function properly if you have enabled caller ID blocking on your cellular phone. Make sure your cellular phone is not blocking caller ID before using SYNC Services.

**Note:** The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle, and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features provided are only an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, place you in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of errors, changes in roads, traffic conditions or driving conditions.

**Note:** When you connect, the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect your vehicle's current location, travel direction and speed to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. Further, to provide the services you request, for continuous improvement, the service may collect and record call details and voice communications. For more information, see SYNC Services Terms and Conditions at [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com). If you do not want Ford or its service providers to collect your vehicle travel information or other information identified in the Terms and Conditions, do not subscribe or use the service.

SYNC Services uses advanced vehicle sensors, integrated GPS technology and comprehensive map and traffic data, to give you personalized traffic reports, precise turn-by-turn directions, business search, news, sports, weather and more. For a complete list of services, or to learn more, please visit [www.SYNCMYride.com](http://www.SYNCMYride.com).

## Connecting to SYNC Services Using Voice Commands

**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice command | Action and Description  |
|---------------|---|
| Services      | This initiates an outgoing call to SYNC Services using your paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone. Once you connect to the service, follow the voice prompts to request the desired service, for example traffic or directions. |

**Once you are connected to SYNC Services, you can also say the following:**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| (what are my (options   choices)   what can I say   [available] commands) | Receive a list of available services from which to choose. |
|---|--|

| Voice command | Action and Description               |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| Services      | To return to the Services main menu. |
| help          | Receive system help.                 |

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where (options | choices) appears you say either; options or choices.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where; what are my (options | choices) appears, you must say; what are my, followed by either, options or choices.

You do not need to say words that appear within square brackets. For example, for where (what can I say [available] commands) appears, you can say, what can I say commands.

## Connecting to SYNC Services Using the Phone Menu

**Press the phone button, then scroll to:**

| Message   | Action and Description  |
|-----------|---|
| SYNC Apps | Press the <b>OK</b> button.   |
| Services  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button. The display indicates the system is connecting.</li> <li>2. Press the <b>OK</b> button again. SYNC initiates the call to the Services portal.</li> <li>3. Once you connect to the service, follow the prompts to request the desired service, for example traffic or directions.</li> </ol> |

## Receiving Turn-by-Turn Directions

**When connected to SYNC Services, press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice command                          | Action and Description   |
|--|--|
| Directions                             | To receive directions to a location. Once you select your destination, the system uploads your current vehicle location, calculates a route based on current traffic conditions and sends it back to your vehicle. After the route download is complete, the phone call automatically ends. You then receive audible and visual driving instructions as you travel toward your destination.  |
| Business search                        | To find a business or type of business. Select your destination, the system uploads your current vehicle location, calculates a route based on current traffic conditions and sends it back to your vehicle. After the route download is complete, the phone call automatically ends. You then receive audible and visual driving instructions as you travel toward your destination.  |
| <b>You can also say the following:</b> |  |
| Search near me                         | To find the closest business or type of business to your location, within business search.   |
| Operator                               | If you need further assistance in finding a location at any time within a Directions or Business search and need to speak with a live operator.<br>The live operator can assist you by searching for businesses by name or by category, residential addresses by street address or by name or specific street intersections.<br>The system may prompt you to speak with an operator when it has difficulty matching your voice request. Operator Assist is a feature of your SYNC Services subscription. For more information on Operator Assist, visit <a href="http://www.SYNCMYride.com/support">www.SYNCMYride.com/support</a> . |
| Yes *                                  | If you miss a turn, SYNC automatically asks if you want the route updated. Say yes when prompted and the system sends a new route to your vehicle.   |

\* During an active route.

## Disconnecting from SYNC Services

To disconnect from SYNC services, say:

| Voice command | Action and Description  |
|---------------|---|
| Goodbye       | From the SYNC Services main menu, or press and hold the phone button on the steering wheel. |

## SYNC Services quick tips

| SYNC Services quick tips |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Personalizing            | You can personalize your Services feature to provide quicker access to your most used or favorite information. You can save address points, for example work or home. You can also save favorite information like sports teams or a news category. You can learn more about personalization by logging onto <a href="http://www.SYNCMyRide.com">www.SYNCMyRide.com</a> .   |
| Push to interrupt        | Press the voice button at any time while connected to SYNC Services to interrupt a voice prompt or an audio clip and say your voice command.   |
| Portable                 | Your subscription is associated with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone number, not your VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). You can pair and connect your phone to any vehicle equipped with SYNC Services and continue enjoying your personalized services.<br>You can even access your account outside your vehicle. Just use the number on your phone's call history. Traffic and Directions features do not function properly but information services and the 411 connect and text message features are available. |

## SYNC™ APPLINK™

### SYNC Mobile Apps

**Note:** You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.

**Note:** iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port in order to start the application.

**Note:** The AppLink feature is not available if your vehicle is equipped with the MyFord Touch system.

**Note:** Depending on your display type, you can access AppLink from the media menu, the phone menu, or by using voice commands. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

## To Access Using the Phone Menu

**Press the phone button to access the SYNC phone menu on-screen. You can then scroll to:**

| Menu item   |  |
|-------------|--|
| Mobile Apps | Press <b>OK</b> to access a list of available applications. Scroll through the list of available applications and press OK to select a particular app. Once an app is running through SYNC, you can access an app's menu by pressing the <b>MENU</b> button to first access the SYNC menu. |

Scroll until the app name followed by "Menu", is displayed (such as, sticher Menu), then press **OK**. From here, you can access an application's features, such as Thumbs up and Thumbs down.

**Press the Menu button to the SYNC menu and scroll to:**

| Menu item   | Action and description  |
|-------------|---|
| SYNC-Media  | Press the <b>OK</b> button.   |
| Mobile Apps | Press the <b>OK</b> button and scroll through the list of available applications and select your desired app. |

Scroll until the app name followed by "Menu", is displayed (such as, Stitcher Menu), then press **OK**. From here, you can access an application's features, such as Thumbs up and Thumbs down.

**For more information, please visit:**

| Website  |
|--|
| <a href="http://www.SYNCMYride.com">www.SYNCMYride.com</a> |

## To Access Using the Media Menu

Press the **AUX** button on the center console.

**For more information, please visit:**

| Website  |
|--|
| <a href="http://www.SYNCMYride.com">www.SYNCMYride.com</a> |

## To Access Using Voice Commands

**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice command | Action and description  |
|---------------|---|
| Mobile Apps   | Say the name of the application after the tone. The app should start. While an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app, for example, "Playlist Road Trip". |

**You can also say the following:**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| The name of an app (such as Stitcher) followed by "help". | To discover the available voice commands. |
|---|---|

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your digital music player over your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, for example artist and album.

**Note:** *The system is capable of indexing up to 6,000 songs.*

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player including: iPod®, Zune™, plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports the following audio formats MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

| Voice command | Action and Description  |
|---------------|---|
| USB [1]       | You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. See Media voice commands. |

You do not need to say words that appear within square brackets. For example, for where USB[1] appears, you can say USB or USB one.

## Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port

**Note:** *If your digital media player has a power switch, make sure you switch it on before plugging it in.*

### To Connect Using Voice Commands

Plug the device into the USB port. See **USB Port** (page 215).



## To Connect Using the System Menu

Plug the device into the USB port. See

## USB Port (page 215).

Press the **AUX** button, then the **Menu** button to enter the Media Menu.

### You can then scroll to:

| Message  | Action and Description   |
|--|--|
| SELECT SRC   | Press the <b>OK</b> button.  |
| SYNC USB   | Press the <b>OK</b> button.<br>Depending on how many digital media files are on your connected device, the following message may appear in the radio display.<br><br>Indexing... |
| <b>When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the Play menu. You can then select one of the following:</b> |  |
| PLAY ALL   |  |
| ARTISTS  |  |
| ALBUMS   |  |
| GENRES   |  |
| PLAYLISTS  |  |
| TRACKS   |  |
| EXPLORE USB  |  |
| SIMILARMUSIC   |  |
| RETURN   | Exit the current menu.   |

## What's Playing?

When a track is playing, you can ask the system to tell you what is currently playing.



## Press the voice button and when prompted say:

| Voice command                | Action and Description   |
|------------------------------|--|
| Whats This?   Whats Playing? | The system reads the metadata tags of the playing track, and if the metadata tags are populated, the system will tell you what track is playing. |

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where text shows: (what's | what is) playing, you must say; "what's playing" or "what is playing".

## Media Voice Commands

### Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following:

| Voice command   |     |
|---|-----|
| USB [1]   |     |
| You can then say any of the following                               |     |
| [Phone] Connections   [Media] Connections   [Bluetooth] Connections |     |
| Pause   |     |
| Play  |     |
| Play All  |     |
| Play Artist ____  | 1,2 |
| Play Album ____   | 1,2 |
| Play Genre ____   | 1,2 |
| [Play] Next Folder  | 3   |
| [Play] Next Track   [Play] Next Song                                |     |
| Play Playlist ____  | 1,2 |
| [Play] Previous Folder  | 3   |

| Voice command                                |   |     |
|--|---|-----|
| [Play] Previous Track   [Play] Previous Song |   |     |
| [Play] Next Track   [Play] Next Song         |   | 1,2 |
| Repeat [On]                                  |   |     |
| Repeat Off                                   |   |     |
| Shuffle [On]                                 |   |     |
| Shuffle Off                                  |   |     |
| Search Album ____                            |   | 1,2 |
| Search Artist ____                           |   | 1,2 |
| Search Genre ____                            | The system searches all the data from your indexed music and, if available, begins to play the chosen type of music. You can only play genres of music which are present in the GENRE metadata tags that you have on your digital media player. | 1,2 |

| Voice command                         |   |     |
|---------------------------------------|---|-----|
| Search Track ___<br>  Search Song ___ | The system searches for a specific artist/track/album from the music indexed through the USB port.  | 1,2 |
| Refine album ___                      | This allows you to make your previous command more specific. By using this command you can filter though a previous selection, such as an artist to play only specific album. | 1,2 |
| Similar Music                         | The system compiles a playlist and then plays similar music to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information.                                |     |
| Autoplay Off                          |   |     |
| Autoplay [on]                         | Turn autoplay on to listen to music processed during indexing. Turn autoplay off to allow the indexing process to finish before the system plays any of your music.           |     |

<sup>1</sup> \_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles".

<sup>2</sup> This voice command is not available until indexing is complete.

<sup>3</sup> This voice command is only available in folder mode.

## Bluetooth Audio Command Guide

### Press the voice button and say:

| Voice command   |
|---|
| Bluetooth Audio   |
| You can then say any of the following:                              |
| [Phone] Connections   [Media] Connections   [Bluetooth] Connections |
| Pause   |
| Play  |
| [Play] Next Track   [Play] Next Song                                |
| [Play] Previous Track   [Play] Previous Song                        |

## Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select your media source, how to play your music, for example by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat, and to add, connect or delete devices.

Press the **AUX** button, then the **Menu** button to enter the Media Menu.

**You can then scroll to:**

| Message                             | Action and Description   |   |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| PLAY MENU                           | Play your music by artist, album, genre, playlists, tracks, similar music or to simply, play all. You can also choose to Explore USB to view the supported digital music files on your playing device. See Play Menu later in this section for more information. |   |
| <b>Select one of the following:</b> |  |   |
| SELECT SRC                          | SYNC USB   | Press the <b>OK</b> button to access music plugged into your USB port. You can also plug in devices to charge them (if supported by your device). Once connected, the system indexes any readable media files. <sup>1</sup> |
|                                     | SYNC BT  | Press the <b>OK</b> button. This is a phone-dependent feature that allows you to stream music playing on your Bluetooth-enabled phone. If supported by your device, you can press seek to play the previous or next track.  |
|                                     | SYNC LINE IN<br>(If Equipped)  | Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and play music from your portable music player over your vehicle's speakers. <sup>2</sup>  |
| MEDIA SETTIN                        | Choose to shuffle or repeat your music and select your Auto-play settings. Once you turn these selections on, they remain on until you turn them off. Press <b>SEEK</b> to play the previous or next track. <sup>3</sup>   |   |
|                                     | SHUFFLE  | Press the <b>OK</b> button to shuffle available media files in the current playlist. To shuffle all media tracks, you must select Play All in the play menu and then select Shuffle.  |
|                                     | REPEAT   | Press the <b>OK</b> button to repeat any song.  |
|                                     | AUTOPLAY   | Press the <b>OK</b> button to turn autoplay on to listen to music processed during indexing. Turn autoplay off to allow the indexing process to finish before the system plays any of your music. <sup>4</sup>              |

| Message      | Action and Description   |
|--------------|--|
| APPLICATIONS | Interact with SYNC-capable mobile applications on your smartphone.                 |
| SYS SETTINGS | Access available Bluetooth Device menu listings as well as Advanced menu listings. |
| EXIT MENU    | Press <b>OK</b> to exit the media menu.  |

<sup>1</sup>The time required to complete this depends on the size of the media the system needs to index. If autoplay is on, you can listen to media processed during indexing. If autoplay is off, you cannot listen to music until the system finishes indexing media. SYNC is capable of indexing thousands of average size media and notifies you if it reaches the maximum indexing file size.

<sup>2</sup>If you have already connected a device to the USB port, you cannot access the line in feature. Some digital media players require both USB and line in ports to stream data and music separately.

<sup>3</sup>Some digital media players require both USB and line in ports to stream data and music separately.

<sup>4</sup>Indexing times can vary from device to device and with regard to the number of songs the system needs to process.

## Accessing Your Play Menu

This menu allows you to select and play your media by artist, album, genre, playlist, track, similar music or even to explore what is on your USB device.

Make sure that your device is plugged into the USB port and is turned on.

Press the **AUX** button, then the **Menu** button to enter the Media Menu.

### You can then scroll to select:

| Message   | Action and Description   |
|---|--|
| PLAY MENU   | Press the <b>OK</b> button.  |
| If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options: |  |
| PLAY ALL  | Press the <b>OK</b> button. The first track title appears in the display.<br>Play all indexed media (tracks) from your playing device in flat file mode, one at a time in numerical order. |

| Message   | Action and Description  |
|-----------|---|
| ARTISTS   | <p>Sort all indexed media by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then plays all artists and tracks alphabetically. If there are fewer than 255 indexed artists, the system lists them alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button. You can select to play all artists or any indexed artist.</li> <li>2. Scroll to choose the desired artist. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> </ol> |
| ALBUMS    | <p>Sort all indexed media by albums. If there are fewer than 255 indexed albums, the system lists them alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button. You can enter the album menu and select from playing all albums or from any individual indexed album.</li> <li>2. Scroll to choose the desired album. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> </ol>   |
| GENRES    | <p>Sort indexed music by genre (category) type. SYNC lists the genres alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Scroll to select the desired genre. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> </ol>  |
| PLAYLISTS | <p>Access your playlists from formats ASX, M3U, WPL or MTP. The system lists your playlists alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Scroll to select the desired playlist. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> </ol>   |
| TRACKS    | <p>Search for and play a specific indexed track. SYNC lists your tracks alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Scroll to select the desired track. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> </ol>  |

| Message      | Action and Description   |
|--------------|--|
| EXPLORE USB  | Explore all supported digital media on your media device connected to the USB port. You can only view media content which is compatible with SYNC; other files saved are not visible.<br><br><ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Scroll to explore indexed media on your flash drive.</li> </ol>   |
| SIMILARMUSIC | Play music similar to what is currently playing from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each song to compile a playlist for you.*<br><br><ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. The system creates a new list of similar songs and begins playing. This feature does not include tracks with incomplete metadata information. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> </ol> |
| RETURN       | Exit the current menu.   |

\*With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks are not available in voice recognition, play menu or similar music. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in "Mass Storage Device Mode", they are available in voice recognition, play menu browsing and similar music. The system places Unknown items into any unpopulated metadata tag.

## System Settings

System settings provide access to your Bluetooth Devices and Advanced menu features.

## Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to enable, disable, add, connect and delete a Bluetooth device.

Press the **AUX** button, then the **Menu** button to enter the Media Menu.

### You can then scroll to:

| Message      | Action and Description      |
|--------------|-----------------------------|
| SYS SETTINGS | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |
| BT DEVICES   | Press the <b>OK</b> button. |

### You can then select one of the following:

|            |                                   |
|------------|-----------------------------------|
| ADD DEVICE | Pair more devices to the system.* |
|------------|-----------------------------------|

# SYNC™

| Message    | Action and Description  |
|------------|---|
|            | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button. When find SYNC appears in the display, press the <b>OK</b> button again.</li> <li>2. Follow the directions in your phone's manual to put your phone into discovery mode. A six-digit PIN appears in the display.</li> <li>3. When prompted on your phone's six-digit display, enter the PIN.</li> </ol> |
| Connect BT | Connect a previously paired Bluetooth-enabled phone. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press <b>OK</b> to select and view a list of devices.</li> <li>2. Scroll until the desired device is chosen and press <b>OK</b> to connect the device.</li> </ol>  |
| BT ON/OFF  | Turn the Bluetooth feature on and off.** <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button and scroll to toggle between on and off.</li> <li>2. Make a selection and press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> </ol>  |
| DEL DEVICE | Delete a paired media device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button and scroll to select the device.</li> <li>2. Press the <b>OK</b> button to confirm.</li> </ol>   |
| DELETE ALL | Delete all previously paired devices. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Press the <b>OK</b> button to confirm.</li> </ol>   |
| RETURN     | Exit the current menu.  |

\*This is a speed-dependent feature. It is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.

\*\*Setting Bluetooth to off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and turns off all Bluetooth features.

## Advanced

The Advanced menu allows you to access and set prompts, languages, defaults and perform a master reset.

Press the **AUX** button, then the **Menu** button to enter the Media Menu.

**You can then scroll to:**

| <b>Message</b>                                   | <b>Action and Description</b>   |
|--|---|
| SYS SETTINGS                                     | Press the <b>OK</b> button.   |
| ADVANCED   | Press the <b>OK</b> button.   |
| <b>You can then select one of the following:</b> |   |
| PROMPTS  | <p>Have SYNC guide you by asking questions, helpful hints or ask you for a specific action.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button and scroll to toggle between on and off.</li> <li>2. Make a selection and press the <b>OK</b> button. SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.</li> </ol>   |
| LANGUAGES  | <p>Choose from the available languages. The displays and prompts are in the selected language.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button and scroll through the available languages.</li> <li>2. Press the <b>OK</b> button when the desired language appears in the display.</li> <li>3. If you change the language setting, the display indicates that the system is updating. When complete, SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.</li> </ol> |
| DEFAULTS   | <p>Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information, for example phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Press the <b>OK</b> button. When restore defaults appears in the display, press the <b>OK</b> button again to confirm.</li> </ol>   |
| MASTER RESET                                     | <p>Completely erase all information stored on SYNC. All phonebook, call history, text messages and all paired devices will be deleted and the system will return to the factory default settings.</p>   |
| INSTALL APP                                      | <p>Download available software applications through the USB port.</p>   |
| RETURN   | <p>Exit the current menu.</p>   |



## SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, see the tables below.

Use the website at any time to check your phone's compatibility, register your account and set preferences as well as access a customer representative via an online chat (during certain hours). Visit [www.SYNCMyRide.com](http://www.SYNCMyRide.com), [www.SYNCMyRide.ca](http://www.SYNCMyRide.ca) or [www.syncmaroute.ca](http://www.syncmaroute.ca) for more information.

| <b>Phone issues</b>  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <b>Issue</b>   | <b>Possible cause(s)</b>  | <b>Possible solution(s)</b>   |
| There is excessive background noise during a phone call.                                     | The audio control settings on your phone may be affecting SYNC performance.     | Review your phone's manual about audio adjustments.   |
| During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.                          | This may be a possible phone malfunction.                                       | Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.   |
| SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.   | This is a phone-dependent feature.<br>This may be a possible phone malfunction. | Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility.<br>Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.<br>Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.<br>Use the SYNCmyphone feature available on the website. |
| The system says Phonebook Downloaded but the phonebook in SYNC is empty or missing contacts. | This may be a limitation on your phone's capability.                            | Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.<br>If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to the device memory.<br>Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.  |

# SYNC™

| <b>Phone issues</b>                              |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <b>Issue</b>                                     | <b>Possible cause(s)</b>  | <b>Possible solution(s)</b>  |
|  |   | Depending upon your phone, you may have to grant SYNC permission to access your phonebook contacts. Make sure to confirm when prompted by your phone during the phonebook download.  |
| I am having trouble connecting my phone to SYNC. | This is a phone-dependent feature.<br>This may be a possible phone malfunction. | Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. Try deleting your device from SYNC, deleting SYNC from your device and trying again. Check the security and auto accept and prompt always settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your phone. Update your device's firmware. Turn off the Auto phonebook download setting. |
| Text messaging is not working on SYNC.           | This is a phone-dependent feature.<br>This may be a possible phone malfunction. | Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.  |

| <b>USB and media issues</b>                               |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <b>Issue</b>  | <b>Possible cause(s)</b>   | <b>Possible solution(s)</b>   |
| I am having trouble connecting my device.                 | This may be a possible device malfunction.   | Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again. Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable. Make sure you insert the USB cable correctly into the device and the USB port. Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings. |
| SYNC does not recognize my device when I turn on the car. | This is a device limitation.   | Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.  |
| Bluetooth audio does not stream.                          | This is a phone-dependent feature. The device is not connected.  | Review the device compatibility chart on the SYNC website to confirm your phone supports the Bluetooth audio streaming function. Make sure you correctly connect the device to SYNC, and that you have pressed play on your device.   |
| SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.       | Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information. The file may be corrupted. The song may have copyright protection, which does not allow it to play. | Make sure that all song details are populated. Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to MTP class.  |

| <b>Vehicle Health Report and Services (Traffic, Directions and Information) issues</b> |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <b>Issue</b>   | <b>Possible cause(s)</b>  | <b>Possible solution(s)</b>   |
| I received a text that I did not activate Vehicle Health Report.                       | You did not activate your account on the website.<br>You may have the wrong VIN (vehicle identification number) listed.               | This is a free feature, but you must first register online to use it.<br>Make sure that your VIN is correctly listed in your account.   |
| I am unable to retrieve the report on the website, or I receive a system error.        | The preferred dealer information did not load correctly.  | When you register your account, you must choose a preferred dealer. If it already lists a dealer, try selecting another dealer and logging out. Log back in, change it back to your preferred dealer, and retrieve the report.  |
| I am unable to submit a report.  | This could be due to your phone's compatibility.<br>Bad signal strength.<br>You did not register your phone correctly on the website. | Update your cellular number in your account on the website.<br>Make sure you have full signal strength and that your Bluetooth volume level has been turned up.<br>Make sure the currently connected phone is registered on your SYNCMyRide account.<br>Try deleting your phone and performing a clean pairing. |
| I heard a commercial when I tried to use Traffic, Directions and Information.          | You did not activate this phone for this service.<br>Your phone has ID blocker active.  | This is a free feature, but you must first register online to use it.<br>Turn off ID blocker on your phone as the system recognizes you by your phone number.<br>Make sure the currently connected phone is the same one that is registered on your SYNCMyRide account.   |

| <b>Voice command issues</b>  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <b>Issue</b>   | <b>Possible cause(s)</b>  | <b>Possible solution(s)</b>   |
| SYNC does not understand what I am saying.   | You may be using the wrong voice commands.<br>You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.  | Review the phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.<br>After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.   |
| SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.                               | You may be using the wrong voice commands.<br>You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.<br>The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it. | Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.<br>Say the song or artist exactly as listed. If you say "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.<br>Make sure you are saying the complete title, such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".<br>If the song titles are in all CAPS, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".<br>Do not use special characters in the title. The system does not recognize them. |
| SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call. | You may be using the wrong voice commands.<br>You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.   | Review the Phone voice commands at the beginning of the phone section.  |

# SYNC™

| <b>Voice command issues</b> |   |   |
|-----------------------------|---|---|
| <b>Issue</b>                | <b>Possible cause(s)</b>  | <b>Possible solution(s)</b>   |
|                             | <p>The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it. Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar, or they may contain special characters. Your phonebook contacts may be in CAPS.</p> | <p>Make sure you are saying the contacts exactly as they are listed. For example, if you save a contact as Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".</p> <p>Using the SYNC phone menu, open the phonebook and scroll to the name SYNC is having trouble understanding. SYNC will read the name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation SYNC is expecting.</p> <p>The system works better if you list full names, such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".</p> <p>Do not use special characters, such as 123 or ICE, as the system does not recognize them.</p> <p>If a contact is in CAPS, you have to spell it. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".</p> |

| <b>AppLink issues</b>  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <b>Issue</b>   | <b>Possible cause(s)</b>                                  | <b>Possible solution(s)</b>   |
| <p>When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC does not find any applications.</p> | <p>An AppLink capable phone is not connected to SYNC.</p> | <p>Ensure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, ensure your phone is paired and connected to</p> |

# SYNC™

| <b>AppLink issues</b>   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <b>Issue</b>  | <b>Possible cause(s)</b>   | <b>Possible solution(s)</b>  |
|   |  | SYNC in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to SYNC's USB port with an Apple USB cable.  |
| My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.                        | AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.                                    | Ensure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Ensure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login on the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.  |
| My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps. | Sometime apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC, over ignition cycles, for example. | Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an "Exit" or "Quit" option, select that then restart the app. If the app does not have that option, you can also manually "Force Close" the app by going to the phone's settings menu, selecting "Apps." then finding the particular app and choosing "Force stop." Don't forget to restart the app afterwards, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC. |

# SYNC™

| <b>Applink issues</b>   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| <b>Issue</b>  | <b>Possible cause(s)</b>  | <b>Possible solution(s)</b>   |
|   |   | On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tap the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC's Mobile App's Menu. |
| My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps. | There is a bluetooth bug on some older versions of the Android OS. This bug may cause apps that were found the last time your phone connected to SYNC not to be found again if you have not turned off bluetooth. | Reset the Bluetooth on your phone by turning it off and then turning Bluetooth back on. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.  |



# SYNC™

| <b>AppLink issues</b>  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <b>Issue</b>   | <b>Possible cause(s)</b>  | <b>Possible solution(s)</b>   |
| My iPhone phone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC.           | The USB connection to SYNC may need to be reset.  | Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it. |
| I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC, but there is no sound or the sound is very low. | The bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.   | Try increasing the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.  |
| I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu.                     | Some Android devices have a limited number of bluetooth ports apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in SYNC's mobile apps menu. | Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.   |

# Accessories

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit the online store web site:

|                                    |
|------------------------------------|
| <b>Web Address (United States)</b> |
|------------------------------------|

|  |
|--|
| <a href="http://www.Accessories.Ford.com">www.Accessories.Ford.com</a> |
|--|

|                             |
|-----------------------------|
| <b>Web Address (Canada)</b> |
|-----------------------------|

|  |
|--|
| <a href="http://www.Accessories.Ford.ca">www.Accessories.Ford.ca</a> |
|--|

Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Ford Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

Ford Motor Company will warrant your accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

## Interior style

- Seat covers\*.

## Peace of mind

- Ford Telematics\*.

\*Ford Licensed Accessory. The accessory manufacturer designs, develops and therefore warrants Ford Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Ford dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details, and request a copy of the Ford Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that are equipped with radio transmitters, for example, two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should be installed only by an authorized dealer.

# Accessories

- An authorized dealer needs to install mobile communications systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Ford dealer add any non-Ford electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.
- An authorized dealer needs to install mobile communications systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Ford dealer add any non-Ford electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

## AUXILIARY SWITCHES

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems equipped with radio transmitters, for example, two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations, and should be installed by an authorized dealer.



E163431

The auxiliary switch option package provides four switches, mounted in the center of the instrument panel. These switches operate only when you switch the ignition on, whether the engine is running or not. Ford recommends, however, that the engine remain running to maintain battery charge when using the auxiliary switches for extended periods of time or higher current draws.

When switched on, the auxiliary switches provide 10 amps, 15 amps or 30 amps of electrical battery power for a variety of personal or commercial uses.

The switches include the fuse and relay kit. This kit contains the required fuses and relays that an authorized technician needs to install into the power distribution box, located under the hood. Refer to the instruction sketch included in the kit. Contact an authorized dealer for service.

# Accessories

---

Each switch includes a power lead (a blunt-cut and sealed wire) located in the underhood cowl shield above the engine block powertrain control module.

The power leads are coded as follows:

| <b>Switch</b> | <b>Circuit Number</b> | <b>Wire Color</b>       | <b>Fuse Amp Rating</b> |
|---------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| AUX 1         | CAC05                 | Yellow                  | 30A                    |
| AUX 2         | CAC06                 | Green with Brown Trace  | 30A                    |
| AUX 3         | CAC07                 | Violet with Green Trace | 10A                    |
| AUX 4         | CAC08                 | Brown                   | 15A                    |

Learn more about auxiliary switches by visiting <https://www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas/>.

# Extended Service Plan (ESP)

---

PROTECT YOURSELF FROM THE RISING COST OF VEHICLE REPAIRS WITH A FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN.

## **EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN (U.S. Only)**

More than 32 million Ford owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford Extended Service Plan. It is the extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides peace of mind protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

### **Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself**

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford Extended Service Plan. With Ford ESP you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

### **Up to 1,000+ Covered Vehicle Components**

There are four core Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what's not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Ford Extended Service Plan is honored by all authorized Ford dealers in the U.S., Canada and Mexico. It is the extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Ford or Lincoln dealership
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts

### **Rental Car Reimbursement**

#### ***1st day Rental Benefit***

You take advantage of replacement transportation if your vehicle is at your authorized dealer for same day covered repairs.

#### ***Extended Rental Benefits***

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including bumper to bumper warranty repairs, and Field Service Actions.

### **Roadside Assistance**

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

### **Transferable Coverage**

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Extended Service Plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you sell your vehicle, prospective buyers may have a higher degree of confidence that vehicle was properly maintained with Ford ESP, thereby improving resale value.

# Extended Service Plan (ESP)

---

## Avoid the Rising Cost of Properly Maintaining Your Vehicle!

Ford Extended Service Plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle's maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of select items that require periodic attention for normal wear:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs.
- The clutch disc.
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers.
- Struts.
- Engine Belts.
- Engine coolant hoses, clamps and o-rings.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment.

## Interest Free Finance Options Available

Take advantage of our interest free installment payment plan. Just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Ford ESP has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit checks, no hassles! To learn more, call our Ford ESP specialists at 800-367-3377.

Ford ESP  
P.O. Box 321067  
Detroit, MI 48232

## EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan. Ford Extended Service Plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Extended Service Plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Ford Extended Service Plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Ford Extended Service Plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Ford Motor Company dealers.

**Note:** *Repairs performed outside of Canada, the United States and Mexico are not eligible for Ford Extended Service Plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change. For more information, visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) to find the Ford Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 191).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

#### Factory-trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

### Genuine Ford and Motorcraft Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use Ford authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

### Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

**Note:** *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

### Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

# Scheduled Maintenance

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

## Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and the Ford Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

## Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

## Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

| <b>Check every month</b>                              |
|---|
| Engine oil level.                                     |
| Function of all interior and exterior lights.         |
| Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure. |
| Windshield washer fluid level.                        |

| <b>Check every six months</b>                                   |
|---|
| Battery connections. Clean if necessary.                        |
| Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary. |
| Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.                |
| Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.            |



## Scheduled Maintenance

| <b>Check every six months</b>   |
|---|
| Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary. |
| Parking brake for proper operation.   |
| Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.                            |
| Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and safety belt) for operation.        |
| Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.         |

### Multi-point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

| <b>Multi-point inspection</b>                      |  |
|--|--|
| Accessory drive belt(s)                            | Horn operation   |
| Battery performance                                | Radiator, cooler, heater and A/C hoses                 |
| Engine air filter                                  | Suspension component for leaks or damage               |
| Exhaust system                                     | Steering and linkage                                   |
| Exterior lamps and hazard warning system operation | Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure** |
| Fluid levels*; fill if necessary                   | Windshield for cracks, chips or pits                   |
| For oil and fluid leaks                            | Washer spray and wiper operation                       |

\* Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission, power steering and window washer.

\*\*If your vehicle is equipped with a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

# Scheduled Maintenance

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of

your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

## NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

### Every 7500 miles (12000 km) or six months (whichever comes first)

|  |
|--|
| Change engine oil and filter.  |
| Rotate tires*, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth.                          |
| Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag. |
| Perform multi-point inspection (recommended).                                      |

\* Vehicles with dual rear wheels should rotate the front wheels when specified; rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted.

### Every 15000 miles (24000 km) or 12 months (whichever comes first)

|   |
|---|
| Inspect automatic transmission fluid level. Consult dealer for requirements.              |
| Inspect brake pads, rotors, hoses and parking brake.                                      |
| Inspect engine cooling system strength and hoses.   |
| Inspect exhaust system and heat shields.  |
| Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tie-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints. |

### Other maintenance items

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Every 30000 miles (48000 km)   | Replace engine air filter.   |
| Every 60000 miles (96000 km)   | Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (5-Speed Transmission only). Consult dealer for requirements. |
|                                | Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seal if non-sealed bearings are used.                          |
| Every 97500 miles (156000 km)  | Replace spark plugs.   |
| Every 105000 miles (168000 km) | Change engine coolant.*  |

## Scheduled Maintenance

| <b>Other maintenance items</b>    |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
|                                   | Replace rear axle fluid.  |
|                                   | Inspect accessory drive belt(s). <sup>**</sup>  |
| Every 150000 miles<br>(240000 km) | Change automatic transmission fluid.  |
|                                   | Change automatic transmission filter. <sup>***</sup>                                      |
|                                   | Replace accessory drive belt(s) if not replaced within the last 100000 miles (160000 km). |
|                                   | Replace front wheel bearings and seals if non-sealed bearings are used.                   |
| Every two years                   | Replace brake fluid.  |

<sup>\*</sup> Initial replacement at six years or 105000 miles (168000 kilometers), then every three years or 45000 miles (72000 kilometers).

<sup>\*\*</sup> If not replaced, inspect every 15000 miles (24000 kilometers).

<sup>\*\*\*</sup> Rear-wheel drive vehicles only.

# Scheduled Maintenance

## SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to

perform extra maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

| <b>Towing a trailer or using a car-top carrier</b> |  |
|--|--|
| Inspect frequently, service as required            | Inspect U-joints.  |
|  | See axle maintenance items under <b>Exceptions</b> .                                   |
| Every 5000 miles (8000 km)                         | Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag. |
|  | Rotate tires*, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.                         |
| Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months           | Change engine oil and filter.  |
|  | Inspect U-joints.  |
| Every 30000 miles (48000 km)                       | Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used.   |
| Every 60000 miles (96000 km)                       | Replace spark plugs.   |

\*Vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels should rotate the front wheels when specified; rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted.

| <b>Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use (such as delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)</b> |  |
|--|--|
| Every 5000 miles (8000 km)   | Inspect brake system.  |
|  | Inspect wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag. |
|  | Rotate tires*, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.                     |
| Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months   | Inspect U-joints.  |

## Scheduled Maintenance

| <b>Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use (such as delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)</b> |  |
|--|--|
| Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months or 200 engine hours   | Change engine oil and filter.  |
| Every 30000 miles (48000 km)   | Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used. |
| Every 60000 miles (96000 km)   | Replace spark plugs.   |

\*Vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels should rotate the front wheels when specified; rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted.

| <b>Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)</b> |  |
|--|--|
| Inspect frequently, service as required  | Replace engine air filter.   |
| Every 5000 miles (8000 km)   | Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag. |
|  | Rotate tires*, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.                         |
| Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months                                       | Change engine oil and filter.  |
|  | Inspect U-joints.  |
| Every 30000 miles (48000 km)   | Replace front wheel bearing grease and grease seals if non-sealed bearings are used.   |
| Every 50000 miles (80000 km)   | Change rear axle fluid.  |

\*Vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels should rotate the front wheels when specified; rear wheels only if unusual wear is noted.

### Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

**Normal vehicle axle maintenance:** Rear axles and power take-off units with synthetic fluid and light-duty trucks equipped with Ford-design axles are lubricated for life; do not check or change fluid unless a leak is suspected, service is required or the assembly has been submerged in water. During long periods of trailer towing with outside temperatures

# Scheduled Maintenance

above 70°F (21°C) and at wide-open throttle for long periods above 45 mph (72 km/h), change non-synthetic rear axle fluid every 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) or three months, whichever comes first. This interval can be waived if the axle is filled with 75W140 synthetic gear fluid meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A, part number FITZ-19580-B, or equivalent. Add friction modifier XL-3 (EST-M2C118-A) or equivalent for complete refill of Traction-Lok rear axles. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 191).

**California fuel filter replacement:** If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

### Hot climate oil change intervals:

Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 5000 miles (8000 kilometers).

If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 3000 miles (4800 kilometers).

**Engine air filter replacement:** The life of the engine air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement.

## SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE RECORD

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |

# Scheduled Maintenance

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |



# Scheduled Maintenance

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |

# Scheduled Maintenance

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | <p>Dealer stamp</p> |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |                     |

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | <p>Dealer stamp</p> |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |                     |

# Scheduled Maintenance

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |

# Scheduled Maintenance

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | <p>Dealer stamp</p> |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |                     |

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | <p>Dealer stamp</p> |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |                     |

# Scheduled Maintenance

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |

# Scheduled Maintenance

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | <p>Dealer stamp</p> |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |                     |

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | <p>Dealer stamp</p> |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |                     |

# Scheduled Maintenance

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |

|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | Dealer stamp |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |              |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |              |

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> Repair Order #:  | <p>Dealer stamp</p> |
| <input type="radio"/> Distance:  |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Engine hours (optional):                                       |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Multi-point inspection (recommended): <input type="checkbox"/> |                     |
| <input type="radio"/> Signature:   |                     |



# Appendices

---

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

# Appendices

---

## Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

# Appendices

---

- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates,

supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

# Appendices

---

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

## **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

## **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see:

# Appendices

| Website   |
|---|
| <a href="http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/">http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/</a> |

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. \$250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

## Adobe

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player] [Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

## End User Notice

### **Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information**

This system Ford SYNC contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

**Read and follow instructions:** Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

# Appendices

---

**Keep User's Guide in vehicle:** When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

## WARNING



Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

---

## General Operation

**Voice Command Control:** Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

**Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

**Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

**Use of Speech Recognition Functions:** Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

**Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

**Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

**Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

# Appendices

---

**Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

**Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

**Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

## **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the Telenav Software. Your use of the Telenav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the Telenav Software.

These terms and conditions represent the agreement ("Agreement") between you and Telenav, Inc. ("Telenav") with respect to the Telenav Software (including upgrades, modifications, or additions thereto) (collectively "Telenav Software"). All references herein to "you" and "your" means you, your employees, agents, and contractors, and any other entity on whose behalf you accept these terms and

conditions, all of whom shall also be bound by this Agreement. Additionally, all of your account information, as well as other payment and personal information provided by you to Telenav (directly or through the use of the Telenav Software, is subject to Telenav's privacy policy located at <http://www.telenav.com>.

Telenav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

### **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the Telenav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the Telenav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the Telenav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the Telenav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the Telenav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the Telenav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

# Appendices

---

You agree to indemnify and hold Telenav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the Telenav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

## **2. Account Information**

You agree: (a) when registering the Telenav Software, to provide Telenav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform Telenav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## **3. Software License**

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, Telenav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the Telenav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the Telenav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the Telenav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### **3.1 License Limitations**

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the Telenav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the Telenav Software without the prior express written consent of Telenav; (c) remove from the Telenav Software, or alter, any of Telenav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or

copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the Telenav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software; or (e) use the Telenav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the Telenav Software without advanced written permission of Telenav.

## **4. Disclaimers**

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will Telenav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the Telenav Software. Telenav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the Telenav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the Telenav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the Telenav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the Telenav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.



# Appendices

---

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## **5. Limitation of Liability**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR

THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the Telenav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both Telenav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the

# Appendices

---

Telenav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to Telenav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the Telenav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Telenav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between Telenav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, Telenav retains all right, title and interest in and to the Telenav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and Telenav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

### **8.3**

By using the Telenav Software, you consent to receive from Telenav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the Telenav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. Telenav may provide such

Notices by posting them on Telenav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the Telenav Software.

### **8.4**

Telenav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

### **8.5**

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

### **8.6**

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including," and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation."

## **9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions**

The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this

# Appendices

---

Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

## **9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC**

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

## **TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

## **9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd**

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 20xx. All rights reserved.

### ***Permitted Use.***

You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### ***Restrictions.***

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any

# Appendices

---

positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

## **Warning.**

The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

## **No Warranty.**

This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

## **Disclaimer of Warranty:**

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Disclaimer of Liability:**

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

## **Export Control.**

You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent

# Appendices

that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

## **Entire Agreement.**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

## **Government End Users.**

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

### **NOTICE OF USE**

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425  
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois  
60606

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

## **I. US/Canada Territory**

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

# Appendices

---

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: “This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen’s Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved.”

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources Canada (“NRCan”). Such data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

# Appendices

---

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

| Territory                                       | Notice   |
|---|--|
| Ecuador   | “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011”<br>“source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®” |
| Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico | “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”  |

IV. Middle East Territory

# Appendices

---

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

| Country | Notice   |
|---------|--|
| Jordan  | “© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data. |

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: “Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l’Equipement et des Transports.”

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client’s entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey (“OS”) to create and sell paper maps, Client’s paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client’s complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic



## Appendices

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Austria   | "© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"   |
| Croatia<br>Cyprus,<br>Estonia,<br>Latvia,<br>Lithuania,<br>Moldova,<br>Poland,<br>Slovenia<br>and/or<br>Ukraine | "© EuroGeographics"  |
| France  | "source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"   |
| Germany   | "Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"  |
| Great Britain   | "Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"    |
| Greece  | "Copyright Geomatics Ltd."   |
| Hungary   | "Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."   |
| Italy   | "La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana." |
| Norway  | "Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"  |
| Portugal  | "Source: IgeoE – Portugal"   |

# Appendices

Spain “Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”

Sweden “Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”

Switzerland “Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

## VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited ([www.pasma.com.au](http://www.pasma.com.au)).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

## VII. China Territory

### *Personal Use Only*

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### *Restrictions*

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b)

# Appendices

---

with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

## **Limited Warranty**

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

## **rigCustomer Remedies**

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

## **No Other Warranty:**

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Limited Liability:**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

# Appendices

---

## **Export Control**

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## **IP Protection**

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## **Entire Agreement**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

## Appendices

---

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

# Appendices

---

## **Vehicle with SYNC only United States and Mexico**

FCC ID: KMHSG1G1

IC: 1422A-SG1G1

### **Mexico**

Model: KMHSG1P1

NOM-121-SCT1-2009

The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## **Vehicle with SYNC with Touchscreen/My Touch**

FCC ID: KMHSYNGG2

IC: 1422A-SYNGG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### **WARNING**



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

---

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.



# Index

## A

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| A/C  |     |
| See: Climate Control.....  | 63  |
| About This Manual.....   | 5   |
| ABS  |     |
| See: Brakes.....   | 88  |
| ABS driving hints  |     |
| See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....                             | 88  |
| Accessories.....   | 263 |
| Interior style.....  | 263 |
| Peace of mind.....   | 263 |
| Accessories  |     |
| See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....                                   | 9   |
| Adjusting the Headlamps.....   | 148 |
| Vertical Aim Adjustment Procedure (Aerodynamic Headlamps).....               | 149 |
| Vertical and Horizontal Aim Adjustment (Sealed Beam Headlamps).....          | 148 |
| Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....  | 42  |
| Airbag Disposal.....   | 33  |
| Air Conditioning   |     |
| See: Climate Control.....  | 63  |
| Air Filter   |     |
| See: Changing the Engine Air Filter.....                                     | 155 |
| Appendices.....  | 286 |
| Audible Warnings and Indicators.....   | 53  |
| Fail-Safe Cooling Warning Chime.....   | 53  |
| Headlamps On Warning Chime.....  | 53  |
| Key in Ignition Warning Chime.....   | 53  |
| Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....  | 53  |
| Shift to Park Warning Chime.....   | 54  |
| Audio System.....  | 206 |
| General Information.....   | 206 |
| Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC.....                               | 208 |
| Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM.....                                       | 207 |
| Automatic Transmission.....  | 83  |
| Brake-Shift Interlock.....   | 85  |
| If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow.....                               | 86  |
| Understanding the Shift Positions of a 6-Speed Automatic Transmission.....   | 84  |
| Understanding the Shift Positions of the 5-Speed Automatic Transmission..... | 83  |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Automatic Transmission Fluid               |     |
| Check.....                                 | 142 |
| Automatic Transmission Fluid Filter.....   | 144 |
| Checking Automatic Transmission Fluid..... | 142 |
| Auxiliary Power Points.....                | 70  |
| 110 Volt AC Power Point.....               | 70  |
| 12 Volt DC Power Point.....                | 70  |
| Locations.....                             | 70  |
| Auxiliary Switches.....                    | 264 |

## B

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Battery                                |     |
| See: Changing the 12V Battery.....     | 145 |
| Bonnet Lock                            |     |
| See: Opening and Closing the Hood..... | 136 |
| Booster Seats.....                     | 18  |
| Types of Booster Seats.....            | 19  |
| Brake Fluid Check.....                 | 144 |
| Brakes.....                            | 88  |
| General Information.....               | 88  |
| Breaking-In.....                       | 112 |
| Bulb Specification Chart.....          | 153 |

## C

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| California Proposition 65.....                                    | 9   |
| Capacities and Specifications - 5.4L V8.....                      | 197 |
| Specifications.....   | 198 |
| Capacities and Specifications - 6.8L.....                         | 201 |
| Specifications.....   | 202 |
| Capacities and Specifications.....                                | 191 |
| Car Wash  |     |
| See: Cleaning the Exterior.....                                   | 156 |
| Changing a Bulb.....  | 151 |
| Lamp Assembly Condensation.....                                   | 151 |
| Replacing Brake/Tail/Turn/Reverse Lamp Bulbs (Cut-Away Only)..... | 153 |
| Replacing Front Parking Lamp and Direction Indicator Bulbs.....   | 152 |
| Replacing Headlamp Bulbs (Aerodynamic).....                       | 151 |
| Replacing Side Marker Bulbs.....                                  | 152 |
| Changing a Fuse.....  | 134 |
| Fuses.....  | 134 |



# Index

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Changing a Road Wheel.....                                     | 186 |
| Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information.....      | 187 |
| Tire Change Procedure.....                                     | 188 |
| Changing the 12V Battery.....                                  | 145 |
| Dual Batteries.....  | 147 |
| Reconnecting the Battery.....                                  | 146 |
| Changing the Engine Air Filter.....                            | 155 |
| Changing the Wiper Blades.....                                 | 147 |
| Checking the Wiper Blades.....                                 | 147 |
| Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance.....                  | 26  |
| Child Restraint Positioning.....                               | 20  |
| Child Safety.....  | 13  |
| General Information.....                                       | 13  |
| Cleaning Leather Seats.....                                    | 160 |
| Cleaning Products.....   | 156 |
| Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....                                 | 160 |
| Cleaning the Engine.....                                       | 158 |
| Cleaning the Exterior.....                                     | 156 |
| Exterior Chrome Parts.....                                     | 157 |
| Exterior Plastic Parts.....                                    | 157 |
| Stripes or Graphics.....                                       | 157 |
| Underbody.....   | 157 |
| Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens..... | 159 |
| Cleaning the Interior.....                                     | 159 |
| Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....                     | 158 |
| Climate Control.....   | 63  |
| Coolant Check  |     |
| See: Engine Coolant Check.....                                 | 139 |
| Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....                        | 33  |
| Cruise Control.....  | 42  |
| Principle of Operation.....                                    | 91  |
| Cruise control   |     |
| See: Using Cruise Control.....                                 | 91  |
| Customer Assistance.....                                       | 120 |
| <b>D</b>   |     |
| Data Recording.....  | 7   |
| Event Data Recording.....                                      | 7   |
| Service Data Recording.....                                    | 7   |
| Daytime Running Lamps.....                                     | 45  |
| Digital Radio.....   | 210 |
| HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting.....            | 211 |
| Direction Indicators.....                                      | 45  |
| Driver and Passenger Airbags.....                              | 28  |
| Children and Airbags.....                                      | 32  |
| Passenger Airbag On and Off Switch.....                        | 28  |
| Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment.....      | 32  |
| Driving Aids.....  | 92  |
| Driving Hints.....   | 112 |
| Driving Through Water.....                                     | 113 |
| DRL  |     |
| See: Daytime Running Lamps.....                                | 45  |
| <b>E</b>   |     |
| Economical Driving.....  | 112 |
| Emission Control System.....                                   | 80  |
| On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....                             | 81  |
| Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) Testing.....        | 81  |
| End User License Agreement.....                                | 286 |
| SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA).....                    | 286 |
| Engine Block Heater.....                                       | 74  |
| Using the Engine Block Heater.....                             | 74  |
| Engine Coolant Check.....                                      | 139 |
| Adding Engine Coolant.....                                     | 139 |
| Checking the Engine Coolant.....                               | 139 |
| Recycled Engine Coolant.....                                   | 140 |
| Severe Climates.....   | 140 |
| What You Should Know About Fail-Safe Cooling.....              | 141 |
| Engine Immobilizer   |     |
| See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....                            | 40  |
| Engine Oil Check.....  | 138 |
| Adding Engine Oil.....   | 138 |
| Engine Oil Dipstick.....                                       | 138 |
| Engine Specifications - 5.4L V8.....                           | 191 |
| Drivebelt Routing.....   | 191 |
| Engine Specifications - 6.8L.....                              | 191 |
| Drivebelt Routing.....   | 192 |
| Environment.....   | 12  |

# Index

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Essential Towing Checks.....  | 103 |
| Before Towing a Trailer.....  | 108 |
| Hitches.....  | 104 |
| Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal<br>Watercraft (PWC)..... | 109 |
| Safety Chains.....  | 105 |
| Trailer Brakes.....   | 105 |
| Trailer Lamps.....  | 108 |
| Trailer Towing Connector.....                                       | 104 |
| When Towing a Trailer.....  | 108 |
| Event Data Recording  |     |
| See: Data Recording.....  | 7   |
| Export Unique Options.....  | 11  |
| Extended Service Plan (ESP).....                                    | 266 |
| EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN (CANADA<br>ONLY).....                         | 267 |
| EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN (U.S.<br>Only).....                           | 266 |
| Exterior Mirrors.....   | 46  |
| Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....                                     | 46  |
| Integrated Blind Spot Mirror.....                                   | 47  |
| Power Exterior Mirrors.....   | 46  |
| Telescoping Mirrors.....  | 47  |
| <b>F</b>  |     |
| Fastening the Seatbelts.....  | 23  |
| Safety Belt Extension Assembly.....                                 | 25  |
| Safety Belt Locking Modes.....                                      | 24  |
| Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy.....                            | 23  |
| Floor Mats.....   | 113 |
| Ford Credit.....  | 9   |
| (U.S. Only).....  | 9   |
| Fuel and Refueling.....   | 75  |
| Fuel Consumption.....   | 79  |
| Calculating Fuel Economy.....                                       | 79  |
| Filling the Tank.....   | 79  |
| Fuel Filter.....  | 145 |
| Fuel Quality.....   | 76  |
| Choosing the Right Fuel.....  | 76  |
| Choosing the Right Fuel - Flex Fuel<br>Vehicles.....                | 76  |
| Fuel Shutoff.....   | 116 |
| Fuses.....  | 127 |
| Fuse Specification Chart.....                                       | 127 |
| Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....                               | 131 |
| Power Distribution Box.....   | 127 |

## G

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Gauges.....  | 49  |
| Battery Voltage Gauge.....                             | 50  |
| Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....                  | 50  |
| Fuel Gauge.....  | 49  |
| Information Display.....                               | 50  |
| General Information on Radio<br>Frequencies.....       | 34  |
| General Maintenance Information.....                   | 268 |
| Multi-point Inspection.....                            | 270 |
| Owner Checks and Services.....                         | 269 |
| Protecting Your Investment.....                        | 268 |
| Why Maintain Your Vehicle?.....                        | 268 |
| Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your<br>Dealership?.....  | 268 |
| Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and<br>Canada..... | 123 |
| Getting the Services You Need.....                     | 120 |
| Away From Home.....                                    | 120 |

## H

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Handbrake   |     |
| See: Parking Brake.....   | 89  |
| Hazard Warning Flashers.....  | 116 |
| Headlamp Adjusting  |     |
| See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....   | 148 |
| Headlamp Removal  |     |
| See: Removing a Headlamp.....   | 150 |
| Head Restraints.....  | 67  |
| Heating   |     |
| See: Climate Control.....   | 63  |
| Hints on Controlling the Interior   |     |
| Climate.....  | 65  |
| Cooling the Interior Quickly.....   | 65  |
| General Hints.....  | 65  |
| Heating the Interior Quickly.....   | 65  |
| Maximum Cooling Performance in<br>Instrument Panel or Instrument Panel<br>and Footwell Positions..... | 66  |
| Recommended Settings for Cooling.....   | 65  |
| Recommended Settings for Heating.....   | 65  |
| Side Window Defogging in Cold<br>Weather.....   | 66  |
| Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods<br>During Extreme High Ambient<br>Temperatures.....           | 65  |

# Index

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....  | 88  |
| Hood Lock<br>See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....  | 136 |
| <b>I</b>   |     |
| Ignition Switch.....   | 72  |
| In California (U.S. Only).....   | 121 |
| Information Displays.....  | 55  |
| General Information.....   | 55  |
| Information Messages.....  | 60  |
| Brake System.....  | 60  |
| Fuel.....  | 60  |
| Maintenance.....   | 60  |
| Tire.....  | 61  |
| Traction Control.....  | 61  |
| Trailer.....   | 62  |
| Transmission.....  | 62  |
| Installing Child Restraints.....   | 14  |
| Child Seats.....   | 14  |
| Using Lap and Shoulder Belts.....  | 15  |
| Using Tether Straps.....   | 17  |
| Instrument Cluster.....  | 49  |
| Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....  | 45  |
| Interior Mirror.....   | 47  |
| Auto-Dimming Mirror.....   | 48  |
| Introduction.....  | 5   |
| <b>J</b>   |     |
| Jump Starting the Vehicle.....   | 117 |
| Connecting the Jumper Cables.....  | 117 |
| Jump Starting.....   | 118 |
| Preparing Your Vehicle.....  | 117 |
| Removing the Jumper Cables.....  | 118 |
| <b>K</b>   |     |
| Keys and Remote Controls.....  | 34  |
| <b>L</b>   |     |
| Lighting Control.....  | 44  |
| Headlamp Flasher.....  | 45  |
| High Beams.....  | 44  |
| Lighting.....  | 44  |
| General Information.....   | 44  |
| Load Carrying.....   | 93  |
| Load Limit.....  | 93  |
| Special Loading Instructions for Owners of<br>Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type<br>Vehicles..... | 99  |
| Vehicle Loading - with and without a<br>Trailer.....   | 93  |
| Locking and Unlocking.....   | 37  |
| Autolock Feature.....  | 38  |
| Autounlock Feature.....  | 38  |
| Enabling or Disabling Autolock and<br>Autounlock.....  | 38  |
| Illuminated Entry.....   | 38  |
| Power Door Locks.....  | 37  |
| Remote Control.....  | 37  |
| Locks.....   | 37  |
| Lug Nuts<br>See: Changing a Road Wheel.....  | 186 |
| <b>M</b>   |     |
| Maintenance.....   | 136 |
| General Information.....   | 136 |
| Manual Climate Control.....  | 63  |
| Heater Only System.....  | 63  |
| Manual Climate Control.....  | 64  |
| Manual Seats.....  | 68  |
| Manual Lumbar.....   | 69  |
| Moving the Seat Backward and<br>Forward.....   | 68  |
| Recline Adjustment.....  | 68  |
| Message Center<br>See: Information Displays.....   | 55  |
| Mirrors<br>See: Windows and Mirrors.....   | 46  |
| Mobile Communications Equipment.....   | 11  |
| Motorcraft Parts - 5.4L V8.....  | 192 |
| Motorcraft Parts - 6.8L.....   | 194 |
| <b>N</b>   |     |
| Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....  | 271 |
| <b>O</b>   |     |
| Oil Change Indicator Reset.....  | 138 |
| Resetting the Oil Life Monitoring<br>System.....   | 138 |

# Index

- Oil Check  
  See: Engine Oil Check.....138
- Opening and Closing the Hood.....136
- Opening Additional Owner's Literature.....124
- Obtaining a French Owner's Manual.....125
- ## P
- Parking Brake.....89
- Passive Anti-Theft System.....40
- SecuriLock®.....40
- PATS  
  See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....40
- Perchlorate.....9
- Power Door Locks  
  See: Locking and Unlocking.....37
- Power Seats.....69
- Recline Adjustment.....69
- Power Steering Fluid Check.....145
- Power Windows.....46
- Accessory Delay.....46
- One-Touch Down.....46
- Protecting the Environment.....12
- ## R
- Rear Passenger Climate Controls.....66
- Recommended Towing Weights.....101
- Calculating the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight for Your Vehicle.....103
- Reduced Engine Performance.....112
- Refueling.....77
- Fuel Filler Cap.....78
- Remote Control.....34
- Car Finder.....36
- Changing the Remote Control Battery.....35
- Reprogramming the Remote Control.....34
- Sounding the Panic Alarm.....36
- Removing a Headlamp.....150
- Aerodynamic Headlamps.....150
- Sealed Beam Headlamps.....151
- Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....160
- Replacement Parts Recommendation.....9
- Collision Repairs.....9
- Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....9
- Warranty on Replacement Parts.....10
- Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....36
- Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....125
- Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....125
- Roadside Assistance.....115
- Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance.....115
- Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage.....116
- Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance.....116
- Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance.....115
- Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance.....115
- Roadside Emergencies.....115
- Running-In  
  See: Breaking-In.....112
- Running Out of Fuel.....77
- Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....77
- ## S
- Safety Precautions.....75
- Satellite Radio.....212
- Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN).....213
- Satellite Radio Reception Factors.....213
- SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service.....213
- Troubleshooting.....214
- Scheduled Maintenance Record.....275
- Scheduled Maintenance.....268
- Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....25
- Seatbelts.....22
- Principle of Operation.....22
- Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....25
- Conditions of operation.....26
- Seats.....67
- Security.....40

# Index

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Sitting in the Correct Position.....  | 67  |
| Snow Chains   |     |
| See: Using Snow Chains.....   | 182 |
| Special Notices.....  | 10  |
| New Vehicle Limited Warranty.....   | 10  |
| Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and<br>Utility Type Vehicles.....                                 | 10  |
| On-board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....  | 10  |
| Special Instructions.....   | 10  |
| Using your Vehicle as an Ambulance.....   | 10  |
| Special Operating Conditions Scheduled<br>Maintenance.....  | 273 |
| Exceptions.....   | 274 |
| Speed Control   |     |
| See: Cruise Control.....  | 91  |
| Starter Switch  |     |
| See: Ignition Switch.....   | 72  |
| Starting a Gasoline Engine.....   | 72  |
| Failure to Start.....   | 73  |
| Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....   | 73  |
| Important Ventilating Information.....  | 73  |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is<br>Moving.....   | 73  |
| Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is<br>Stationary.....   | 73  |
| Starting and Stopping the Engine.....   | 72  |
| General Information.....  | 72  |
| Steering.....   | 92  |
| Steering Wheel.....   | 42  |
| Sun Visors.....   | 48  |
| Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....  | 48  |
| Supplementary Restraints System.....  | 27  |
| Principle of Operation.....   | 27  |
| Symbols Glossary.....   | 5   |
| SYNC™ Applications and<br>Services.....   | 234 |
| 911 Assist.....   | 234 |
| SYNC Services: Traffic, Directions &<br>Information (TDI) (If Equipped, United<br>States Only)..... | 238 |
| Vehicle Health Report (If Equipped, United<br>States Only).....                                     | 236 |
| SYNC™ AppLink™.....   | 242 |
| SYNC Mobile Apps.....   | 242 |
| SYNC™.....  | 216 |
| General Information.....  | 216 |
| SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....  | 254 |

## T

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Technical Specifications   |     |
| See: Capacities and Specifications.....                                | 191 |
| The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto<br>Line Program (U.S. Only)..... | 122 |
| Tire Care.....   | 164 |
| Glossary of Tire Terminology.....                                      | 166 |
| Information About Uniform Tire Quality<br>Grading.....                 | 164 |
| Information Contained on the Tire                                      |     |
| Sidewall.....  | 167 |
| Temperature A B C.....   | 165 |
| Traction AA A B C.....   | 165 |
| Treadwear.....   | 165 |
| Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....                                   | 183 |
| Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure<br>Monitoring System.....          | 184 |
| Understanding Your Tire Pressure<br>Monitoring System.....             | 184 |
| Tires  |     |
| See: Wheels and Tires.....   | 163 |
| Towing a Trailer.....  | 100 |
| Load Placement.....  | 100 |
| Towing the Vehicle on Four<br>Wheels.....                              | 110 |
| Emergency Towing.....  | 110 |
| Recreational Towing.....   | 110 |
| Towing.....  | 100 |
| Traction Control.....  | 90  |
| Principle of Operation.....  | 90  |
| Trailer Sway Control.....  | 101 |
| Transmission Code Designation.....                                     | 196 |
| Transmission.....  | 83  |
| Transmission   |     |
| See: Transmission.....   | 83  |
| Transporting the Vehicle.....  | 110 |

## U

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Under Hood Overview.....          | 137 |
| USB Port.....                     | 215 |
| Using Cruise Control.....         | 91  |
| Switching Cruise Control Off..... | 91  |
| Switching Cruise Control On.....  | 91  |
| Using Snow Chains.....            | 182 |

# Index

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....                        | 244 |
| Accessing Your Play Menu.....                                  | 249 |
| Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port.....      | 244 |
| Media Menu Features.....                                       | 247 |
| Media Voice Commands.....                                      | 246 |
| System Settings.....   | 251 |
| What's Playing?.....   | 245 |
| Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....                               | 221 |
| Accessing Features Through the Phone Menu.....                 | 225 |
| Accessing Your Phone Settings.....                             | 230 |
| Making a Call.....   | 224 |
| Pairing a Cell Phone for the First Time.....                   | 221 |
| Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones.....                            | 222 |
| Phone Options during an Active Call.....                       | 224 |
| Phone Voice Commands.....                                      | 222 |
| Receiving Calls.....   | 224 |
| System Settings.....   | 231 |
| Text Messaging.....  | 228 |
| Using Traction Control.....                                    | 90  |
| Switching the System Off.....                                  | 90  |
| System Indicator Lights and Messages.....                      | 90  |
| Using Voice Recognition.....                                   | 218 |
| Initiating a Voice Session.....                                | 218 |
| System Interaction and Feedback.....                           | 219 |
| Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only)..... | 123 |
| <b>V</b>   |     |
| Vehicle Care.....  | 156 |
| General Information.....                                       | 156 |
| Vehicle Certification Label.....                               | 196 |
| Vehicle Identification Number.....                             | 195 |
| Vehicle Storage.....   | 161 |
| Battery.....   | 162 |
| Body.....  | 161 |
| Brakes.....  | 162 |
| Cooling system.....  | 162 |
| Engine.....  | 161 |
| Fuel system.....   | 162 |
| General.....   | 161 |
| Miscellaneous.....   | 162 |
| Removing Vehicle From Storage.....                             | 162 |
| Tires.....   | 162 |
| Ventilation  |     |
| See: Climate Control.....                                      | 63  |
| VIN  |     |
| See: Vehicle Identification Number.....                        | 195 |
| Voice Control.....   | 42  |
| <b>W</b>   |     |
| Warning Lamps and Indicators.....                              | 51  |
| Anti-Lock Braking System.....                                  | 51  |
| Anti-Theft System.....   | 51  |
| Battery.....   | 51  |
| Brake System.....  | 51  |
| Check Fuel Cap.....  | 51  |
| Cruise Control.....  | 52  |
| Direction Indicator.....                                       | 52  |
| Engine Coolant Temperature.....                                | 52  |
| Engine Oil.....  | 52  |
| Fasten Safety Belt.....  | 52  |
| High Beam.....   | 52  |
| Low Fuel Level.....  | 52  |
| Low Tire Pressure Warning.....                                 | 52  |
| Powertrain Malfunction/Electronic Throttle Control.....        | 52  |
| Service Engine Soon.....                                       | 52  |
| Traction Control System.....                                   | 53  |
| Traction Control System Off.....                               | 53  |
| Transmission Tow/Haul.....                                     | 53  |
| Washer Fluid Check.....  | 145 |
| Washers  |     |
| See: Cleaning the Exterior.....                                | 156 |
| See: Wipers and Washers.....                                   | 43  |
| Waxing.....  | 157 |
| Wheel Nuts   |     |
| See: Changing a Road Wheel.....                                | 186 |

# Index

---

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Wheels and Tires.....               | 163 |
| General Information.....            | 163 |
| Technical Specifications.....       | 190 |
| Windows and Mirrors.....            | 46  |
| Windshield Washers.....             | 43  |
| Windshield Wipers.....              | 43  |
| Wiper Blades                        |     |
| See: Checking the Wiper Blades..... | 147 |
| Wipers and Washers.....             | 43  |
| Wrecker Towing                      |     |
| See: Transporting the Vehicle.....  | 110 |